

Forgotten Books

— www.forgottenbooks.com —

Copyright © 2016 FB &c Ltd.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, distributed, or transmitted in any form or by any means, including photocopying, recording, or other electronic or mechanical methods, without the prior written permission of the publisher, except in the case of brief quotations embodied in critical reviews and certain other noncommercial uses permitted by copyright law.

AN • ITALIAN GRAMMAR

WITH EXERCISES

BY

MARY VANCE YOUNG

Professor of Romance Languages, Mount Holyoke College

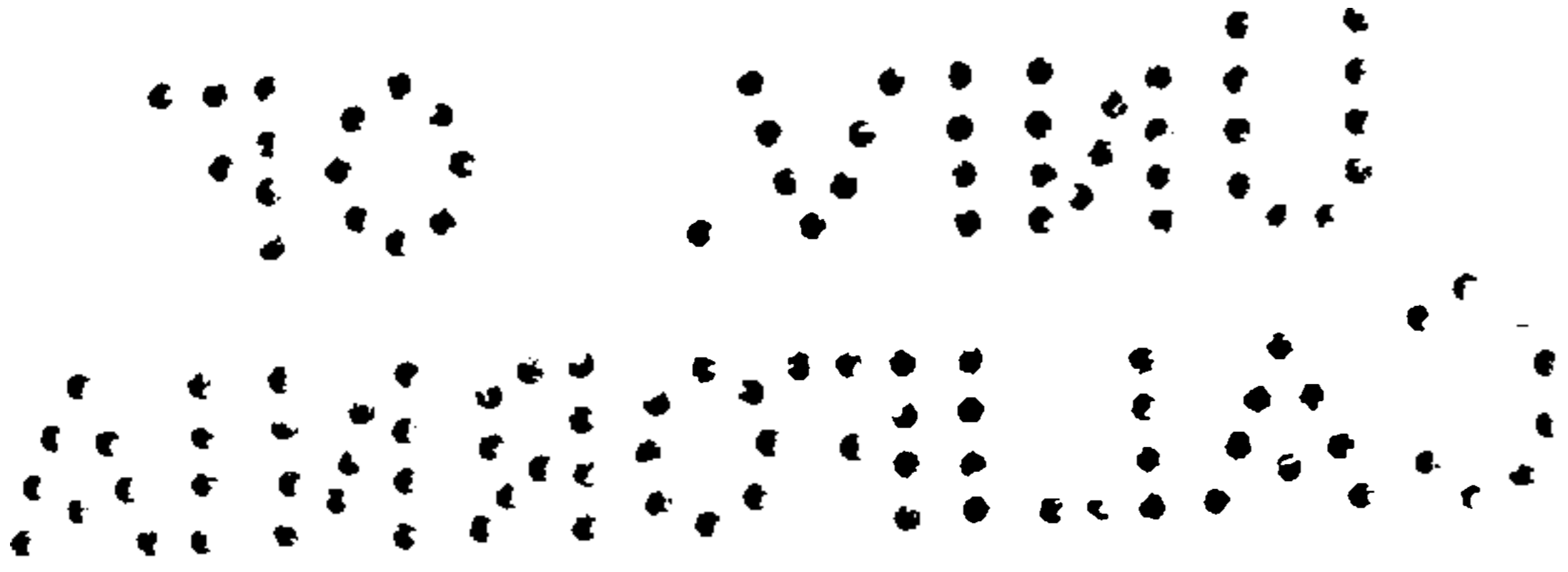
LIBRARY
OF THE
UNIVERSITY
OF



NEW YORK

HENRY HOLT AND COMPANY

1904



Copyright, 1904,

BY

HENRY HOLT AND COMPANY

ROBERT DRUMMOND, PRINTER, NEW YORK

PREFACE.

THIS book is intended for class use and reference. Practical utility has been considered more than harmony of design. This will explain what might be taken for a lack of plan. For instance, the general rules for the inflection of adjectives being given in the first chapter, the chapter on adjectives is placed after those on verbs and pronouns. In order that regular verbal inflection may be thoroughly learned before irregular forms are taken up the chapter on irregular verbs is rather widely separated from that on the regular, and for the same reason the regular conjugations are given before the auxiliaries (the present tenses of the principal auxiliaries being familiar to the pupil from the first lesson); the chapter on the modification of nouns by means of prefixes and suffixes does not follow that on nouns, and numerals are treated of quite at the end of the book. Numerals belong rather to the dictionary than to the grammar and may conveniently be learned in connection with reading or oral exercises. This chapter, as well as that on prepositions, is intended largely for reference.

Although every part of the book has been independently worked out, it in no way claims to be a work of investigation. Among grammars consulted in its preparation should be mentioned Moise's *Regole ed Osservazioni della Lingua Italiana*, from which material for the lists of

prepositions, etc., has been drawn, and Mariotti's *Grammar*; and for certain parts Meyer-Lübke's, Grandgent's, Sauer's, and Benelli-Marucelli's have also given hints. The dictionaries of Rigutini-Fanfani and of Edgren, Josselyn's *Etude sur la phonétique italienne*, and the section on the Italian language in Gröber's *Grundriss der Romanischen Philologie* have been helpful.

The author returns thanks to Mr. T. Comba, who furnished the material for several exercises and read most of the book in manuscript; to Mr. Freeman Josselyn, Jr., who read the chapter on phonetics and made valuable suggestions; to Mr. Grandgent and Messrs. D. C. Heath & Co., by whose permission a device for representing to the eye the irregularities of certain verbs, similar to that employed in Mr. Grandgent's *Grammar* was adopted; to Mr. Ramsey, by whose permission the paragraphs on the correspondences between Italian and English words have been borrowed from his *Spanish Grammar*; and to Messrs. Fraser and Squair, whose *French Grammar* furnished the model for No. 190 seq. in the chapter on prepositions.

The material for the exercises has been gathered from various sources. In that taken from an Italian school history no responsibility for facts is assumed. Only a few oral exercises are furnished, since the teacher will usually prefer to make his own from the vocabulary in the exercises.

The author hopes that this *Grammar* may be useful to her Romanic fellow workers, and that they in return will kindly point out its defects.

MARY VANCE YOUNG.

MOUNT HOLYOKE COLLEGE, September, 1903.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

	PAGE
PRONUNCIATION, ORTHOGRAPHY, AND GRAPHIC SIGNS.....	I
CHAPTERS	
I. FIRST PRINCIPLES. ARTICLES AND NOUNS.....	27
II. ARTICLES WITH PREPOSITIONS. SYNTAX OF THE AR- TICLE.	29
III. NOUNS, THEIR GENDER AND NUMBER.....	37
IV. REGULAR VERBS.	48
V. AUXILIARY VERBS.	56
VI. PERSONAL PRONOUNS. DISJUNCTIVE PERSONAL PRO- NOUNS.	65
VII. CONJUNCTIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS. REFLEXIVE VERBS	72
VIII. ADJECTIVES AND PARTICIPLES.	82
IX. POSSESSIVES.	98
X. DEMONSTRATIVES. RELATIVES. INTERROGATIVES. IN- DEFINITES.	102
XI. PREFIXES AND SUFFIXES.	111
XII. IRREGULAR VERBS. IMPERSONAL VERBS. DEFECTIVE VERBS.	116
XIII. PREPOSITIONS. DEPENDENT INFINITES.	123
XIV. CONJUNCTIONS. MOODS AND TENSES.	142
XV. ADVERBS. NUMERALS AND NUMERICAL VALUES. IN- TERJECTIONS.	156
IRREGULAR VERBS BY CONJUGATIONS.	171
ALPHABETICAL TABLE OF IRREGULAR VERBS.	198
EXERCISES.....	207
ITALIAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.....	244
ENGLISH-ITALIAN VOCABULARY.....	258
INDEX.	269

ITALIÄN GRÄMMAR.

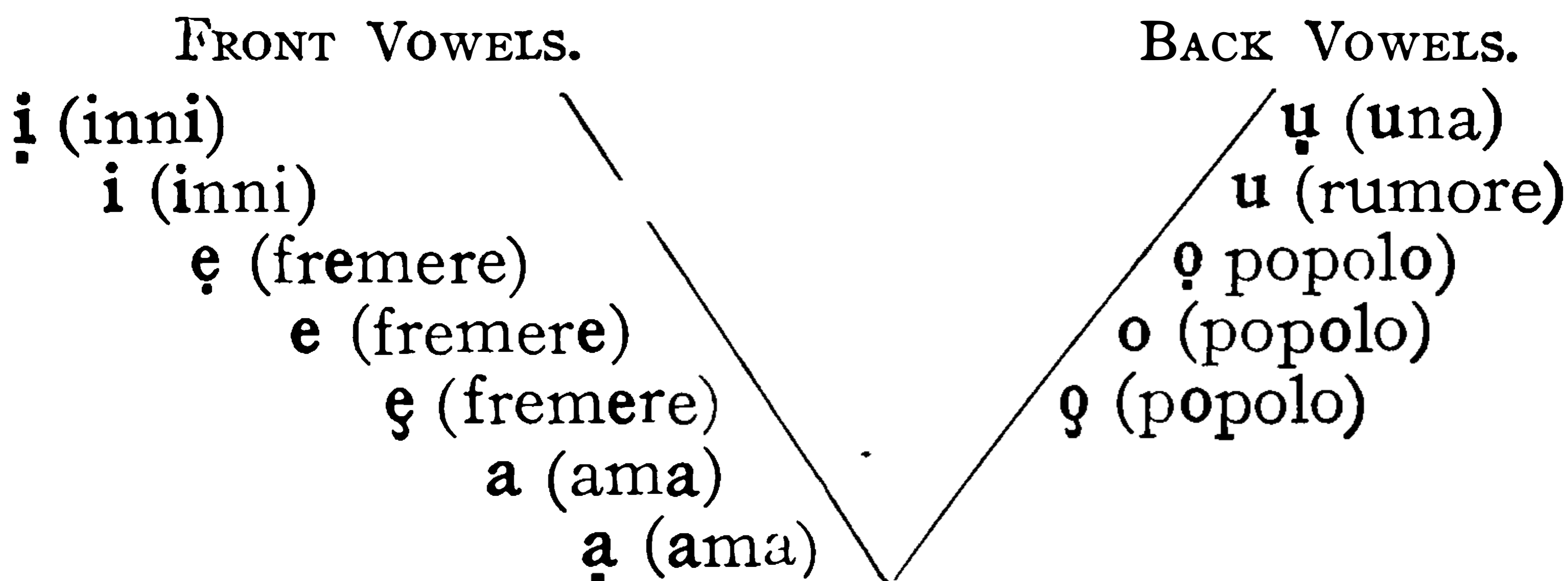
PRONUNCIATION ORTHOGRAPHY, AND GRAPHIC SIGNS.

1. THE following tables contain all the sounds ordinarily used in spoken Italian, classified according to the locality and to the manner of their production.

(α) Vowels are distinguished with reference to their locality only, as *front* and *back* vowels. (β) Consonants are classified (*a*) according to locality, as: (1) bi-labials, formed by the upper and lower lips; (2) labio-dentals, formed by the lower lip and the upper teeth; (3) linguo-dentals, by the tongue and upper teeth; (4) front-palatals, by the tip of the tongue against the front part of the hard palate; (5) back-palatals, by the ridge of the tongue against the back part of the hard palate; (6) gutturals, by the ridge of the tongue against the soft palate; (*b*) according to manner of production, as: (1) stops, to form which the breath is *stopped* by the actual touching or closing of the organs, as in *p*; (2) continuants, in which the breath is only *squeezed*, not stopped, as in *f*; (3) liquids, which differ from other continuants in that they partake more of the character of vowels, as *l*. These classes of consonants must also be subdivided into *voiceless*, in the production of which the vocal cords do not vibrate, and *voiced*, in which they do vibrate. For instance, *p* is the voiceless bi-labial stop, i.e., in forming it the breath is stopped by the

touching of the upper against the lower lip, the vocal cords not vibrating, and *b* is the same with vibration of the vocal cords.¹ An Italian key-word is given for each sound, the letter representing the sound in question being printed in heavy type. The approximate English correspondent in each case is given below (5, 12 sq.²).

VOWELS.



CONSONANTS.

(a) SIMPLE CONSONANTS.

	Bi-labial.		Labio-dental.		Linguo-dental.	
	Voiceless.	Voiced.	Voiceless.	Voiced.	Voiceless.	Voiced.
Stops.	p (pena)	b (babbo)			t (tento)	d (donna)
Continuants.		u (uomo)	f (fango)	v (vero)		
Liquids.			m (mano)			

	Front-palatal.		Back-palatal.		Guttural.
	Voiceless.	Voiced.	Voiceless.	Voiced.	
Stops.			k (corte)	g (gola)	ng* (vengo)
Continuants.	s (so)	s (rosa)		sh (sciagura)	
Liquids.		n (nina) l (lotto) r (rima)		j (pieno) ñ (taglio) ñ (maligno)	

* This sound can as yet be only tentatively classified

¹ Any simple work on phonetics may serve to further elucidate the tables.

² Heavy-face figures refer to paragraphs.

(b) COMPOUND CONSONANTS.

Front-palatal.	
Voiceless.	Voiced.
c (cielo) z (zio)	g (gente) z (zelo)

2. These thirty-six sounds are graphically represented by twenty-two letters, *k*, *w*, *x*, and *y* not occurring in the Italian alphabet. Otherwise it is the same as the English.

3. The letters of the alphabet and their Italian names are as follows:

a a	g gi	n ñne	t ti
b bi ¹	h acca	o o	u u
c ci	i i	p pi	v ve or vi
d di	j je or i lungo	q cu	z zeta
e e	l elle	r erre	
f ffe	m mme	s esse	

(a) *K*, *x*, *y*, *w*, occurring only in foreign words, are called **cappa**, **iccase** or **ics**, **ipsilon**, **doppio vu**.

(b) The names of the letters are the same in the plural as in the singular: **i bi**, the b's; **gli a**, the a's.

(c) The gender of the letters of the alphabet is somewhat variable, but in general *a* and *e* and the consonant ending in *a* and *e* are feminine (**la zeta**, "the z"; **l'enne** = **la enne** with elision of the *a*—"the n"), while the other letters, i.e., *i*, *o*, *u*, and the consonants ending in *i*, *o*, or *u*, are masculine.

4. The number of sounds being so much in excess of that of the letters used to represent them, it is evi-

¹ These names being Italian words, the pupil should refer to 5 and 12 sq. before attempting to pronounce them.

dent that one character must be used to represent more than one sound. The Italian orthography, however, is much more nearly phonetic than is the English or French, and with care and instruction every student should acquire a really good pronunciation of the language. The rules given below (5 sq.) will be found useful, although the pupil should always bear in mind that *the comparisons therein made with sounds already known to him are only approximate, no Italian sound being quite the same as the English sound most nearly resembling it.* The sound should be learned by imitation. The teacher is therefore advised to pronounce the Italian key-word slowly, the pupil noting carefully his pronunciation.

VALUE OF THE LETTERS OF THE ALPHABET.

(a) Value of the Vowels.

5. **I** has approximately the sounds of English *ee*¹ in "meet".

Ī has approximately the sounds of English *i* in "pin", or, when at the end of a word (as in **poi**), of *y* in "hurry".²

E, called "close *e*", has approximately the sound of English *a* in "mate".³

Ē, called the "open *e*", has approximately the sound of English *e* in "met".

¹ That is, of the *first part* of the *ee* in "meet". This, as all English vowels, is really a diphthong, while the Italian vowels are pure.

² The two *i*'s will not be graphically distinguished in this book; the pupil may learn them by ear and by imitation. The first *i* will in the meantime answer all purposes.

³ That is, of the *first part* of the sound. Cf. above, foot-note 1.

A has approximately the sound of *a* in “father”.

A is a more neutral **a** difficult to describe. The pupil may at first content himself not to distinguish between these two sounds. Later his ear, if he has the opportunity of hearing Italians speak, will detect the difference.

O, called “open *o*”, has no English equivalent. It is a sound between the *a* in “paw” and the *o* in “pop”, nearly that given in parts of Maine to the *o* in “road”, “coat”. The sound, although difficult of explanation, may be readily learned by imitation.

O, called “close *o*”, has approximately the sound of *o* in “pope”.

U has approximately the sound of *oo* in “too”.

U has approximately the sound of *oo* in “toot”.

Between the open and the close *e*, the open and the close *o*, there is an intermediate sound which the student may detect by ear and learn by imitation, such subtle shades of sounds not being capable of definition.

6. Attention is called to the fact that the vowel sounds, produced alone and in the order given in paragraph 1, beginning with *i* and going down the left side of the triangle, then up the right, recede continually and regularly in the mouth. Therefore the *i-e-a* series is called the *front*, the *a-o-u* the *back* series. From *a* to *u* the lips are also regularly more and more rounded.¹

¹ Mr. Josselyn (*Etude sur la phonétique italienne*, p. 13) for this reason calls the *a-o-u* series the *labial*, giving to the *i-e-a* series the name of *anterior*. His *anterior* therefore = our *front*, his *labial* our *back* series.

7. All vowels as well as all consonantal sounds are produced in a quicker, more energetic manner in Italian than in English (although the former are somewhat less energetic than the French vowels). One must really work harder in pronouncing them.

The vowels never tend to become neutral, nor do the consonants ever take after them a neutral vowel, as is the case in English.

This is what gives to spoken Italian its peculiarly staccato effect.

8. The only real difficulty offered by the vowels is the distinction of open and close *e* and *o*.

In words of popular development, i.e., such as have always been a part of the spoken language, the Latin *ē* or *ī* is represented generally in Italian by an *e*, the Latin *ĕ* or *ae* by an *e*, *ō* or *ū* by *o*, *ö* or *au* by *o*.

It follows that accented *e* and *o* in the groups ¹ *ie* and *uo* are open:

Piēde, foot (< *pēdem*); **buōno**, good (< *bōnum*).

But: **godere**, to enjoy (< *gaudēre*); **capello**, hair (< *capillum*); **loro**, their (< *illōrum*); **volto**, face (< *vultum*).

MORE SPECIAL RULES FOR THE QUALITY OF THE VOWELS.

9. **E** is close:

(1) In unaccented syllables.²

(2) In monosyllables,³ whether standing alone or in composition with other words:

¹ The first element in these groups being a consonant, they cannot be called diphthongs. See 28, Rem. (1), also table of consonants, where the *i* is registered as *j*, the *u* as *w*.

² This *e* is really medium close, but for practical purposes may be regarded as close.

³ Words which are not normally monosyllabic but which have

Me, me; **meco**, with me (a compound of **me** and the preposition **con**); **e**, and; **i tre re**, the three kings; **che**, that, which.

EXCEPTIONS: **è**,¹ is; **eh!** (exclamation); **chè**, nonsense!; **re** (musical note); **be** (imitation of the *bah* of sheep). Also words of foreign origin; as, **il tè**, tea.

(3) In oxytones ending in a vowel,² which vowel is regularly marked by the grave accent (see 32 *a*):

Perchè, why, because; **temè**, he feared.

Exceptions: (*a*) Proper names; as, **Mosè**, Moses; **Giosuè**, Joshua.

(*b*) Nouns of foreign origin³; as, **caffè**, coffee; **canapè**, sofa.

(*c*) The interjections **ahimè**, **immè**, **ohimè**; also **cioè**,⁴ "that is, that is to say".

(4) In the accented ending of the infinitive, imperfect indicative and subjunctive, and of the preterite indicative of **-ère** and of **'-ere** verbs. (See 67 (2).)

(5) In the endings **-remo**, **-rete** of verbs of all conjugations:

Mostreremo, we shall show; **temerete**, you shall fear.

(6) In the adverbial ending **-mente** and the substantive ending **-mento**:

Felicemente, happily; **andamento**, going, gait.⁵

10. **O** is close:

become so by contraction naturally do not come under this rule. Ex.: **sè'** (not **sè'**), for **sèi**, "thou art".

¹ Notice that this has the grave accent to distinguish it from **e** conj. Or, more exactly, the conjunction does *not* take the grave to distinguish it from the verbal form (32 (*b*) (1)).

² But not in **piè**, contraction of **piède**. Cf. note to 9 (2).

³ These never conform to rule.

⁴ Notice the compounding with **è**, "is".

⁵ In cases *not* covered by the rules the **e** is open.

(1) In unaccented syllables.¹


(2) In monosyllables ending with a consonant²:

Con, with; **n**on, not.

11. But in monosyllables and in oxytones ending in a vowel, i.e., where accented **o** ends a word, that **o** is open²:

So, I know; **h**o, I have; **mostrerò**, I shall show.

EXCEPTIONS: **L**o, definite article and pronoun; also contractions.

 In all cases not covered by the first rule (paragraph 9 (1) and paragraph 10 (1)), i.e., all accented e's and o's, will in this book have their quality indicated by diacritic signs, **e** and **o** indicating the close, **è** and **ò** the open pronunciation.

(b) Value of the Consonants.

12. **P**, **b**, **f**, **v**, **m**, **n**, **l**, and **q**³ are pronounced *approximately* as in English, the stops being, however, more explosive,⁴ and the **n** and **l** being made farther forward in the mouth.

13. **T** and **d** are so much farther forward as to come into a different sound-category. They are not, as in English, post-dentals, but linguo-dentals, the tip of the tongue touching the back of the teeth in producing them.

¹ Cf. 9 (1). Not where the **o** is a contraction of **uo** in **c**or, for **cuore**, "heart".

² Notice the difference between **e** and **o**.

³ **Q** is not to be found in the table of consonants because it is not a simple consonant but equals **k** followed by **w**. The Italian **q** always represents this sound, like English **q** in "quick". It never represents **k**.

⁴ Cf. 7.

14. **C** and **g** represent two quite different sounds.

Before the back vowels, **a**, **o**, **u**, they represent the back-palatal stops, **c** the voiceless, somewhat as in English "cat", "kid", **g** the voiced, somewhat as in English "got":

Canto, I sing (**c** as in English "can");

gola, throat (**g** as in English "go").

15. But before the front vowels, **e** and **i**:

(a) **C** represents a sound somewhat like that of English **ch**, i.e., it passes into the category of compound consonants:

Cielo, sky (**c** pronounced like **ch** in "chain"); **cercare**, to look for (the first **c** pronounced **ch**, the second **k**).

(b) **G** also becomes a voiced compound consonant, corresponding to the voiceless **c** and represents a sound like that in English "gentle", but more forcible:

Gentile, nice (**g** almost as in the cognate "gentle");

legislatura (**g** almost as in the corresponding English word).

REMARK. **Cc**, **gg** before **e** and **i** have the same sound as the simple consonant, only prolonged:

Caccio, I hunt (**cc** like **tch** in "catch", but prolonged); **saggio**, wise (**gg** like **g** in "sage", but prolonged).

16. Where a **c** or **g** representing the back-palatal stop stands before one of the front vowels, an **h** is inserted to indicate the voiceless pronunciation:

Chiave, key (the initial sound as in the English word).

Ghirlanda, garland (the initial sound as in the English word).

Ch never has the sound given to it in English "chin".

17. **Ng** is like the English sound in, for instance,

“coming”, with a distinct hard **g** after it, the two, however, forming but one sound:

Vengo, I come (pronounced *venggo*); **lingua**, tongue (*linggua*).

This same **ng** sound is given to an **n** alone before the stop **c** or before **q**:

Ancora, again (*angkora*); **dunque**, therefore (*dungkwe*).

18. Consonantal **u**, i.e., unaccented **u** followed by a vowel,¹ has almost the sound of English **w**:

Uomo, man (**u** almost like **w** in “woman”);
guanto, glove (*gwanto*).

U never has the sound given to it in English “museum”, which might be written “mew”.

19. **S** has two sounds in Italian: (1) it is voiceless as in English “see”, “hearse”; (2) it is voiced like the **s** in “hears”, or the **z** in “maze”. The general rule is:

S initial followed by a vowel or by one of the voiceless consonants **c**, **f**, **p**, **q**, **t**; **s** medial followed by a voiceless consonant, also **ss**, are voiceless as in “see”:

Santo, saint; **sasso**, stone; **spiare**, to spy; **fr̄esco**, fresh; **asfalto**, asphalt.

S medial between vowels,² **s** medial or initial before the voiced consonants **b**, **d**, **g**, **m**, **n**, **l**, **r**, are voiced as in “use”: *usual*.

Sgridare, to scold; **museo**, museum.

But intervocalic **s** is voiceless:

(a) After the prefixes **de**, **di**, **pre**, **pro**, **re**, **ri**, **tra** (where the **s** is really initial):

¹ *Accented u* followed by a vowel retains its vowel sound. Ex.: **due**, “two” (**u** as in the English “duel”).

² This rule does not apply to cases like **dicesi**, “they say”, where the **s** is really initial, = **si dice**. In compounds like **girasole**, “sunflower”, the **s** is also initial.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



“spindle”; **naso**, “nose”; **Mussulmano**, “Mussulman”; **parasito**, “parasite”; **Pisa** (name of city); **susino**, “plum-tree”; and compounds of these; also in some rare words.¹

20. **Sc** before a front vowel has somewhat the sound of **sh** in “shiver”; before a back vowel that of **sk** in “skirmish”:

Scienza, science; **sciocco**, stupid (**sh** in both); but **scuola**, school (same sound as in the English word); **scatola**, box.

21. When **sc** has the **sk** sound before a front vowel, that fact is graphically indicated by the insertion of an **h**²:

Scherzo, play, joke; **schiena**, spine.

22. Unaccented **i**³ before a vowel sounds almost like German **ch** in **ich**, but less guttural. English **y** in “don’t you” (pronounced rapidly but clearly, not “don chew”) or in emphatic “yes” approximates this sound⁴:

Piede, foot.

23. **J** is only another graphic sign for **i**. It is employed as initial in a number of words taken from the Latin; as, **juridico**, “juridical”; **Jacopo**, “James”; also in **conjugare**, “to conjugate”; and frequently in the plural of nouns in **io**: as, **giudizio**, “judgment”, pl. **giudizj** (cf. 61, note).

¹ Which are given by Moise, *Regole ed Osservazioni della Lingua Italiana*, Firenze, Coppini, 1884.

² Cf. 16.

³ Unaccented **i** in the combinations **cia**, **cio**, **ciu**, **gia**, **gio**, **giu**, is a mere graphic sign, indicating that the **c** or **g** is a compound consonant before one of the back vowels. Its insertion serves precisely the opposite of that of the **h** before front vowels as mentioned in 21.

⁴ Accented **i** followed by a vowel retains its vowel sound. Ex.: **die**, poetical for **di**, “day”; **potà**, “power”. Cf. note to 18.

24. **Gl** indicates usually the liquid **l**, a sound somewhat like that of **lli** in "brilliant", or of **li** in "Brazilian"¹:

Briglia, bridle; **gli** (article and pronoun).

(a) But in **negligere**, "to neglect", and its derivatives, the **gl** is sounded as in English, also in **Angli**, **Anglicano**, **geroglífico**, **glicerina**, and a few other rare words.

These words are not thoroughly Italianized.

25. **Gn** represents liquid **n**, a sound which bears the same relation to **n** as does liquid **l** to **l**. It somewhat resembles the sound of **ni** in "union", "onion", or that of **ng** in French *montagne*²:

Vergogna, shame; **agnello**, lamb.

26. **Z** and **zz** usually represent a **ts** very energetically enunciated, but sometimes the corresponding voiced sound **dz**.

In general a **z** derived from Latin **t**, **ct**, or **pt** has the voiceless (**ts**) sound, one from Latin **d** or Greek **ζ** the voiced (**dz**):

Grázia, grace, favor (< *gratiam*); **aziõne**, action (< *actiõnem*); **nõzze**, wedding (< *nuptias*)—all with **ts** sound.

But: **rõzzo**, rude (< *rudum*); **zõna**, zone—with **dz** sound.

The following rules may also be helpful.

The sound is voiceless: **ʈs**

(a) Generally when it is initial or when it is medial after a consonant:

¹ This comparison, as well as that given below for the liquid **n**, is very inadequate. The sounds are *simple*. In forming them the middle of the tongue lies almost flat against the hard palate and makes the ordinary **n**, **l** in withdrawing the tip from its position near the back of the upper teeth.

² See note to 24.

Zio, uncle; **avanzo**, remainder.

(b) When it is followed by *i* plus a vowel:

Prezioso, precious; **ózio**, leisure; **avarizia**, avarice.

It is voiced: *dz*

(a) In verbs of more than four syllables ending in **-izzare**: *dz*

Armonizzare, to harmonize; **utilizzare**, to utilize.

EXCEPTIONS: **Attizzare**, **dirizzare**, **guizzare**, **rizzare**, **stizzare** have on the contrary the voiceless *z*. Their compounds, such as **indirizzare**, keep this voiceless sound.

(b) In **zelo**, "zeal", and its compounds; in **azzurro**, "azure"; **bazar**, "bazaar"; **dozzina**, "dozen"; **mezzo**, "middle", and its compounds; **orizzonte**, "horizon"; **pranzo**, "dinner"; **ribrezzo**, "shivering"; **zéfiro**, "zephyr"; **zona**, "zone", and some rare words.¹

27. **H** is silent in Italian. It is found as initial only in the verbal forms **ho**, "I have"; **hai**, "thou hast"; **ha**, "he has"; **hanno**, "they have", and in a few exclamations such as **hura** (really not Italian). It serves graphically to indicate the pronunciation of certain combinations (see 16 and 21), and sometimes to show that two vowels coming together preserve each one its separate value, as in **ahi**.

Vowel Groups.

28. Diphthongs and triphthongs exist apparently in great number in Italian, but there are in reality few diphthongs and no triphthongs at all, many of the vowels having consonantal value, and many diphthongs in appearance being really dissyllables.

¹ For which see Moise.—It will be noticed that the words given under (b) either have the Latin *d* (<*z*) or are of foreign extraction.

In **buono**, **figliuolo**, for instance, the u before o is a consonant (=w), and the i after gl is a part of the Ì (cf. 24). In other combinations given under 22, foot-note 3, i is a mere sign.

In **buoi** the u is a consonant and the final i forms a syllable.

A real diphthong is two vowels produced by one and the same breath-impulse, one of which receives the accent.¹ A diphthong in which the second element is the accented is called a *rising diphthong*, one in which the first bears the accent a *falling diphthong*:

Ex.: (a) Rising diphthongs: **paese**, country; **paúra**², fear.

(b) Falling diphthongs: **assái**, very; **áura**, breeze, air; **léi**, she, to her; **stóico**, stoic.

REMARKS. (1) In all (apparent) rising diphthongs in which the first member is i or u, that first member is consonantal:

Piede, foot; **buono**, good.

(2) In compounds where the principal accent is removed from the diphthong, that diphthong becomes dissyllabic, i.e., the two vowels form each a separate syllable, thus dissolving the diphthong:

Paese (ae diphthong), **paesano** (ae dissyllabic); **paura**, **pauoso**.

Syllabication.

29. With the few exceptions of the diphthongs and vocalic dissyllables (see 28), Italian words have as many syllables as vowels, and the syllables are divided

¹ Cf. Hempl, *German Orthography and Phonology*, 146.

² Care must be taken in the pronunciation of au. The sound is not aw or ow, but ah-oo, pronounced very rapidly.

in such a way that each begins with a consonant. In the division

(1) A consonant between two vowels goes with the second¹:

A-mo, I love; **zo-na**; **uo-mo**.

EXCEPTIONS: Compound words, which are divided into their component parts. Ex.: **Mal-a-gé-vo-le**, "difficult", from **mal** and **agévole**; **ab-u-sare**, "to abuse" (**ab** + **usare**).

(2) Double consonants are divided:

An-no, year; **męz-zo**; **doz-zi-na**.

(3) Usually in medial groups of two or more consonants one goes with the preceding, the other one or two with the following:

Al-to, high; **al-tro**, other.

EXCEPTIONS²: (1) In groups composed of a stop or a continuant plus a liquid (i.e., of **p**, **b**, **t**, **d**, **c**, **g**, **f**, **v**, plus **l** or **n**) both members go with the following syllable:

Ma-dre, mother; **a-cri-mó-ni-a**, acrimony; **te-a-tro**, theatre; **a-pri-re**, to open; **se-grę-to**, secret.

(2) In the case of *c+q* there is difference of usage: **a-cquistare** and **ac-quistare**.

Groups of *s* followed by one more consonant (*s impura*) are usually said also to make exception; but while the question is scarcely decided, it is probable that they are divided in the usual way:

¹ The syllables must be sharply divided, and the pupil must resist a tendency to attach a consonant between two vowels to the first. He has been accustomed to say, for instance, *med-i-cine*, the *d* belonging decidedly to the first syllable, the *c* (*s* sound) more to the second than to the third. He must in Italian divide the same word thus: **me-di-ci-na**.

² The liquid *n* and *l* being simple sounds go with the following syllable according to the general rule. Ex.: **i-gnu-do**, "naked"; **bri-glia**, "bridle".

os-cu-ro, "dark" (not o-scu-ro); mqs-tro, "I show" (not mq-stro).

Accentuation.

30. The large majority of Italian words are strongly accented on the penult (that is, the syllable before the last):

.máno, hand; castígo, punishment.

There are, however, many words bearing the tonic accent on the antepenult or even farther back; also a considerable number bearing it on the last syllable:

Mostrò,¹ he showed; mostrárono, they showed; consíderano, they are considering; virtù, virtue; proprietà, property.

Graphic Accents.

31. Three graphic accents, the *grave*, the *acute*, and the *circumflex*, are used in Italian. The grave is much more frequent than the others.

32. The grave accent is placed:

(a) On a final vowel stressed in pronunciation:

Mostrerà la sua bontà. He will show his goodness.

(b) On monosyllables by nature or by contraction ending in a vowel:

Già, already; più, more; è, is; sì, yes; piè (contracted from piède), foot.

EXCEPTIONS: (1) A number of homonyms (that is, words the same in appearance and often in sound, but different in meaning), such as:

¹ Receives the grave accent. See following paragraph.

e , and,					<i>to distinguish it from è</i> , is;
se , if,	“	“	“	“	sè , self;
si , self, one,	“	“	“	“	sì , yes;
di , of,	“	“	“	“	dì , day;
ne , of it,	“	“	“	“	nè , neither;
la (<i>def. art.</i>),	“	“	“	“	là , there;
li “ “	“	“	“	“	lì , there;
da , from,	“	“	“	“	dà , he gives.

(2) Certain verbal forms, as: **fa**, he does, makes; **va**, he goes; **sta**, he stands; **sa**, he knows; (but **può**, he can).

(c) Also often as a distinguishing mark on:

(1) Shortened forms of the preterite to distinguish them from shortened forms of the infinitive:

mostràr (for **mostrarono**),¹ they showed; **mostrar** (for **mostrare**), to show.

temèr (for **temerono**), they feared; **temer** (for **temere**), to fear.

partìr (for **partirono**), they departed; **partir** (for **partire**), to depart.

(2) Other verbal forms which have homonyms²:

dài, thou givest; **dai** (prep. plus art.).

dànnò, they give; **danno**, damage, harm.

vòi (for **vuòi**), thou wishest; **vòi**, you.

àbitino, let them dwell; **abitino**,³ little dress.

(3) The *accented* penult of polysyllables ending in two vowels:

¹ This and the following (corresponding) forms of the other conjugations are accented, in speaking, on the antepenult: **mostrárono**, **temérono**, **partírono**.

² This usage is optional and arbitrary. Some writers use the acute accent in these cases.

³ Accented on the penult according to the general rule.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books' Full Membership provides unlimited access to more than 28,000 volumes of Christian literature for \$8.99/month


**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

(b) Sometimes on the *i*, plural of the noun and adjective ending *-io*¹:

Studi, studies; *necessari*, necessary.

35. It will be observed that there is a good deal of latitude and some lack of unanimity among Italians as to the use of the graphic accents. Sections 32 (a), (b), and exceptions, and 34 (a) cover the ordinary usage.  In this book the acute accent will be employed only to show the stressing in pronunciation of a syllable other than the penultimate or than the ultimate bearing the grave accent.² This indication, together with the marking of the closed and open *e* and *o* (see note under 11), is peculiar to it. The accent and marking are to be observed in pronunciation, *but not to be employed in writing the exercises.*

Elision, Contraction, Truncation, etc.

36. Besides *lo*, *la*, *gli*, *le*, *una* (article³), *lo*, *la*, *gli*, *le*, *mi*, *ti*, *ci*,⁴ *vi*, *ne*, *si* (pronominal), the preposition *di* and the conjunctions *se* and *che*⁵ are regularly elided before a vowel. All words of more than one syllable ending in an unaccented vowel may elide that vowel if another vowel follows,⁶ or truncate it before

¹ *'-io* not *-íio*. Special attention should be paid to the accentuation of words ending in *-io*, *-ia*. No rule can be given for it. A good dictionary should be the guide.

² The acute will also be placed on all words ending in *-ia*, *-io*, whether the *i* be stressed or unstressed.

³ For which see 41.

⁴ Which becomes *c* only before *e* and *i*, since it would otherwise lose its proper sound. Cf. 14.

⁵ Preferably only before *e* and *i*.

⁶ Elision is much more frequent in poetry than in prose.

any initial consonant except **s** followed by another consonant; but compounds of the conjunction **che**, as **dacchè**, **giacchè**, **benchè**, are the only oxytones which elide their accented vowel. Contractions such as **a'** (for **ai**), **po'** (**poço**) are common.

(a) The conjunctions **e** and **o** and the preposition **a** often add **d** before a vowel; the preposition **su** adds **r**: **ed**, **od**, **ad**, **sur**.

(b) A word beginning with **s** impure, when preceded by a consonant prefixes **i**: **scuola**, school; **in iscuola**, in school.

Use of Capitals.

37. Capitals are employed as in English save that:

(a) The pronoun **io**, "I", is not written with a capital unless it begins a sentence, whereas **Lei**, **Ella**, "you", are often capitalized.

(b) Adjectives of nationality are not written with a capital. The same words used as nouns are usually capitalized:

Ecco un libro italiano. Here is an Italian book. **E Italiano.** He is an Italian.

(c) The names of months and of days of the week are usually written with a small letter, also titles such as signor, "Mr".¹

(Exercise I.)

Correspondence between Italian and English.

38. There are in Italian a large number of words corresponding so nearly both in form and meaning to the English ones that they may be easily recognized

¹ Greater individual freedom in the use of capitals exists in Italian than in English.

by the pupil. The following lists of corresponding terminations will aid in this recognition.

Nouns.

(The letter *f* or *m* at the beginning of the line indicates the gender.)

f. *ade* becomes **ata**: **brigata, cascata.**

m. *age* becomes **ággio**: **pággio, personággio.**¹

m. *al* becomes **ale**: **animale, canale** (*or* **allo**: **corallo, cristallo, metallo**).

m. *alt* adds **o**: **asfalto, cobalto.**²

m. *an* adds **o**: **cristiano, veterano.**

m. *ant* adds **e**: **diamante, instante.**

m. *arian* becomes **áριο**: **centenáριο, unitáριο.**

m. *ate* becomes **ato**: **carbonato, stato.**

m. *ator* adds **e**: **creatore, oratore.**

m. *ce* becomes **cio** (**zio, zzo**): **commércio or commercio, palazzo** (sometimes **palaccio**), **precipízio.**³

m. *cle* becomes ***culo**,⁴ **colo**, or **chio**: **círcolo** (*or* **cír-culo**) or (more commonly) **cérchio**, **ostáculo.**

m. *ct* becomes **tto**: **contatto, effetto, intelletto.**⁵

f. *cy* becomes **zia**: **aristocrazía, poténzia.**

m. *ent* adds **e**: **accidénte, agente, oriénte**; or adds **o**: **conténto, convénto, talénto.**

m. *ge* becomes ***gio**: **privilégio, vestígio.**

m. *gen* adds **o**: **nitrógeno.**⁶

¹ Many others in which the correspondence is not so perfect are yet easily identified, as: **viággio**, "voyage", "journey"; **corággio**, "courage"; **oltrággio**, "outrage", etc.

² Also **assalto**, "assault", etc. For the *f* in **asfalto** see p. 26, Rem. 3 (*b*).

³ Also **solazzo**, "solace", **spazio**, "space", etc.

⁴ Terminations marked with an asterisk indicate that words so ending are accented on the antepenultimate syllable.

⁵ Also **prodótto**, "product".

⁶ **Idrógeno**, "hydrogen", **ossígeno**, "oxygen", etc.

- m. *graph* becomes grafo: autógrafo, fonógrafo.¹
 f. *ic* adds *a: aritmética, música, lógica.
 f. *ice* becomes ízia: avarízia, malízia.
 f. *ine* becomes ina: disciplina, medicina.
 f. *ion* adds e: confusiõe, religiõe.
 . *isan* becomes igiano: artigiano, partigiano.²
 . *isk* becomes isco: asterisco, basilisco.
 . *ism* adds o: despotismo, pessimismo.
 . *ist* adds a: artista, dentista.
 . *ite* becomes ito: appetito, granito, sito.
 . *ment* adds o: fragmento (or frammento), monumento.
^m
^m m. *meter* becomes *metro: anemómetro, gasómetro.
 f. *mony* becomes monia: cerimônia, parsimônia.
 f. *nce* becomes nza: danzã, intelligenza, scienza.³
 m. *on* adds e: barõe, sermõe.
 m. *or* adds e: errore, splendore, vapore.⁴
 f. *ose* becomes osa: glucosa, r^õsa.
 m. *ot* adds a: déspota, patriõta (patriõtta).
 m. *phone* becomes *fono: gramófono, teléfono.
 m. *ry* becomes *rio: consistório, mistério.
 m. *scope* becomes scopio: microscópio, telescópio.
 f. *sis* becomes si: crisi (or crise), sinopsi.⁵
 m. *ter* or *tre* becomes tro: çentro, ministro, registro.
 f. *tion* becomes ziõe: condiçiõe, naziõe.
 f. *tude* becomes *túdine: amplitúdine, multitudine, solitúdine.

¹ This *ph* regularly becomes *f*: filosofo, etc. Cf. Remark (3) (b), p. 26.

² Also *cortigiano*, "courtesan", etc.

³ Also *eccellenza*, "excellence", *circonferenza*, "circumference", etc. In other cases *nce* gives *ncia*; as, *província*, "province", etc.

⁴ Also *autore*, "author", *onore*, "honor", etc.

⁵ Also *tesi*, "thesis," etc.

- f. *ty* becomes *tà*: eternità, società.¹
 m. *ule* becomes **ulo*: cápsulo (or capsolo), glôbulo.
 f. *ure* becomes *ura*: figura, natura.
 m. *um* becomes *o*: museo, prêmio.
 m. *us* becomes *o*: censo, gênio.
 f. *y* (not otherwise provided for above) becomes
ía: anatomía, energía, geografia, zoología.

Adjectives.²

- acious* becomes *ace*: capace, sagace, verace.
al adds *e*: centrale, immortale.
an adds *o*: americano, pagano.
ant adds *e*: dominante, vacante.
ar adds *e*: circolare, solare.
arious becomes *ario*: precário, vicário.
ary becomes *ario*: contrario, ordinario.
ate becomes *ato*: duplicato, ornato.
ble becomes **bile*: nôbile, notábile, solúbile.
ct becomes *tto*: intatto, perfetto.
ense becomes *enso*: denso, imenso.
ent adds *e*: evidente, prudente (or *o*: contento).
est adds *o*: manifesto, onesto.
eous becomes **eo*: calcáreo, errôneo, ígneo.
ferous becomes **fero*: aurífero, carbonífero.
ic or *ical* becomes *ico*: misantrópico, satírico.³
ique becomes *ico*: antico.
id adds **o*: rápido, sólido, válido.
ile remains unchanged: fácile, fertile, fragile.

¹ Also città, "city", etc.

² Only the masculine singular of the Italian adjectives is given.

³ Also público, "public", etc. But musicale as given above under *al*.

ine becomes *ino*: *aquilino*, *divino*.

ite becomes *ito*: *erudito*, *infinito*.

ive becomes *ivo*: *decisivo*, *definitivo*.¹

lent adds *o*: *violento*.

nal becomes *no*: *diurno*, *eterno*.

ocious becomes *oce*: *atroce*, *feroce*, *precoce*.

ory becomes *ório*: *meritório*, *preparatório*.²

ose or *ous* becomes *oso*: *verboso*, *famoso*, *furioso*, ***luminoso***.³

tial becomes *ziale*: *potenziale*.

und becomes *ondo*: *moribondo*, *rubicondo*.

ure becomes *uro*: *futuro*, *puro*.

Verbs.

ate becomes *are*: *calcolare*, *investigare*.

fy becomes *ficare*: *fortificare*, *magnificare*.

ize becomes *izzare*: *civilizzare*, *organizzare*.

e becomes often *are*: *cominciare*, *continuare*, *curare*, etc.⁴

REMARKS. (1) The fact that most Italian words end in a vowel is evident.

(2) It will further be observed that (a) English *x* (which is not a simple consonant, =ks) is replaced by *c* or *s*: *eccellenza*, “excellence”; *ossígeno*, “oxygen”. (b) *Ou* or *u* are often replaced by *o*: *corraggio*, “courage”; *cortigiano*, “courtesan”; *circolare*, “circular”. (c) In combinations of two stops assim-

¹ Also *attivo*, “active”, etc.

² *Preparativo* is, however, more used.

³ Also *giocoso*, “jocose”, *lussurioso*, “luxurious”, etc.

⁴ These English *e* verbs are mostly derived from French verbs of the first conjugation, i.e., *er* verbs. The comparison here of the three languages with the Latin is interesting.

ilation occurs: **perfetto**, “perfect”; **manifattore**, “manufacturer”. (d) **H** is omitted: **onore**, “honor”; **teatro**, “theatre”; **reumatismo**, “rheumatism” (cf. 27).

(3) In words of Greek origin:


(a) **Y** becomes **i**: **simpatía**, “sympathy”; **tipográfico**, “typographical”.

(b) **Ph** becomes **f**: **filósofo**, “philosopher”; **ortografía**, “orthography”.

(c) Initial **pn**, **ps**, and **pt** drop the **p**: **neumático**, “pneumatic”; **salmista**, “Psalmist”; **Tolomeo**, “Ptolemy”.

(4) It is not unusual in Italian to find two developments of the same termination, or two forms of the same word: **palacio** and **palazzo**, **circolo** and **circulo**.

(5) There are in Italian many words beginning with consonant groups strange to the English, which nevertheless correspond to English words: **sviluppare**, “to develop”; **smontare**, “to dismount”. The development of the words may be made clear by the consideration of such doublets as **sviare** and the older **disviare**, “to lead out of the way”, etc.

 Words corresponding in the two languages, or which may be understood and formed by the help of the foregoing directions, will be spaced in the exercises in this book and will not appear in the vocabularies. Where two or more Italian terminations correspond to one English one, the Italian word will be given, but it is hoped that the table will even in these cases help to impress the word upon the memory.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



√ **Lò** *scolare*, the scholar; **gli scolari**, the scholars.

√ **L' uòmo**, the man; **gli uòmini**, the men.

√ **L' Italiano**, the Italian; **gl' Italiani**, the Italians.

Feminine:

Singular **la**, plural **le**.

La becomes **l'** before any vowel, **le** may become **l'** before **e** only¹:

√ **La mano**, the hand; **le mani**, the hands.

√ **L' erre**, the letter R; **l' erre**, the R's.

L' economía, the economy; **l' economíe**, the economies.

√ **L' epístola**, the epistle; **l' epístole**, the epistles.

41. The forms of the indefinite article are:

Masculine:

(a) **Un**, corresponding to **il** and accordingly used before any consonant except impure **s** and **z**. The same form is used before all vowels.²

(b) **Uno**,³ corresponding to **lò**, and used like it before impure **s** and **z**⁴:

√ **Un libro**, a book; **uno scolare**, a scholar; **un uòmo**, a man.

Feminine:

una, contracted to **un'** before a vowel:

√ **Una ragazza**, a girl; **un' ora**, an hour.

42. From the foregoing paragraphs and examples is abstracted the following general rule for gender and number:

¹ This is the rule for ordinary prose.

² Strictly speaking the form when used before a vowel is **uno** with contraction of the **o**, but since the contraction is never indicated by an apostrophe it seems best to consider it as identical with **un**.

³ Compare the use of English "a" and "an".

⁴ The indefinite article has no plural. "Some" = **alcuni**.

The sign of the masculine singular is *o*; of the masculine plural *i*.

The sign of the feminine singular is *a*; of the feminine plural *e*.

This general rule applies to articles, nouns, pronouns, and adjectives.

Exceptions will be noted later.

(Exercises II and III.)

(Read II and write III.)

CHAPTER II.

ARTICLES WITH PREPOSITIONS.

Syntax of the Article.

43. Italian nouns are not inflected. Their relations are indicated by the use of prepositions. When the definite article is used with a preposition the two are usually contracted into one word. The contractions are:

	il	i	lo	gli	la	le	l'
di, of	dèl	dèi (dè')	dèllo	dègli	dèlla	dèlle	dèll'
a, to	al	ai (a')	allo	agli	alla	alle	all'
da, by	dal	dai (da')	dallo	dagli	dalla	dalle	dall'
in, in	nèl	nèi (nè')	nèllo	nègli	nèlla	nèlle	nèll'
con, with	còl	còi (cò')	còllo	cògli	còlla	còlle	còll'
su, on	sul	sui (su')	sullo	sugli	sulla	sulle	sull'
per, for	pèl	pèi (pè')	pèllo	pègli	pèlla	pèlle	pèll'

REMARKS. (1) *Per* is less often contracted than the other prepositions.

(2) The forms *de'*, *a'*, etc., are pronounced almost as though written *dei*, *ai*,¹ etc.:

✓ *Il libro del ragazzo.* The boy's book.

Il libro dello scolare è sulla tavola. The scholar's book is on the table.

✓ *L' immagine nello specchio.* The image in the mirror.

Syntax of the Definite Article.

REMARK. It is advised that only the rules given in coarse print be learned at this point, although others may be referred to.

44. The definite article is used in Italian where it would not be in English:

(1) Before abstract nouns and nouns denoting a whole class of beings as objects:

✓ *L' attenzione è necessaria.* Attention is necessary.

✓ *La carità è una virtù.* Charity is a virtue.

✓ *L' uomo è mortale.* Man is mortal.

✓ *Gl' Italiani amano la musica.* Italians love music.

(2) Before a title followed by a proper name:

✓ *Il re Vittorio Emanuele.* King Victor Emmanuel.

✓ *Il signor Bernasconi.* Mr. B.

✓ *La contessa Cesareo.* Countess C.

EXCEPTIONS: (a) Where the title is a vocative.

(b) Often before *papa*, *re*, *conte*, and *maestro*²:

Papa or il Papa Innocenzo, Pope Innocent.

¹ *De la*, etc., often seen of late, are pronounced as though written *della*, etc. The ear often decides as to whether a form should or should not be contracted. Ex.: *Domandò con un cert' atto trascurato ma col cuor sospeso, e con l' orecchio all' erta.*—*Con gli occhi stralunati* (Manzoni, *I Promessi Sposi*, Cap. II).

² But the article can never be omitted before *imperatore*, "emperor".

(c) In the titles **Carlo magno**, “Charlemagne”; **Alessandro magno**,¹ “Alexander the Great”; **Maria Vèrgine**,² “the Virgin Mary”.

(3) Before the surnames of well-known persons³:

✓ **Il Machiavelli è morto.** Machiavelli is dead.

La Duse è attrice. Duse is an actress.

(4) Before the given names of women:

Ècco l' Albina. Here is Albina.⁴

REMARK. This rule is sometimes extended to the given names of well-known men, to given names in the vocative preceded by the possessive, and often to diminutives:

Dante, or il Dante.⁵

Parlami, il mio pòvero Enrico! Speak to me, my poor Henry!

Il Carlino. Charlie.

(5) Before the names of continents, countries, provinces, mountains, lakes, seas, rivers, but not cities⁶:

¹ But notice that **magno** is really a Latin word, and an adjective, not a title, and that **Carlo**, **Alessandro**, are baptismal, not family names. (See following rules.)

² But **la Vèrgine Maria**.—Where the words **Madama**, **Madamigella** are followed by a title the article comes between as in French (the words being borrowed from that language): **Madama la Contessa Cesareo**, Madam the Countess C.

³ There is in these cases an adjective implied such as “well known”, etc. Compare rule (6), below.—Neither is this rule always observed by good writers: **Senza aver gran cognizione di Condillac.** Without having great knowledge of C. **Il século di Voltaire**, Voltaire’s century (Pellico, **Le Mie Prigioni** Cap XXI). The article is not used where the given name and the surname are expressed.

⁴ Here again one might supply “our”, “our good”, etc.

⁵ Notice, however, that **Dante** is properly speaking not a surname.

⁶ Exceptions: **il Cairo**, **la Mirandola**, **la Bastia**, **la Mecca**, **la Rocella**, **l' Aia**.

√ Abitiamo l' América del Nörd. We live in North America.

√ L' Itália è una penísola. Italy is a peninsula.

√ Il Piemönte è una parte dell' Italia. Piedmont is a part of Italy.

√ Il Tévere è un fiume presso Rōma. The Tiber is a river near Rome.

But:

√ Firēnze è una bella città. Florence is a beautiful city.

EXCEPTIONS: The article is omitted:

(a) After *in*, meaning either going to or dwelling in a country:

√ Vado in Itália. I am going to Italy.

Èccomi in Fráncia. Here I am in France.

(b) After *di*, where the preposition and name of country could be replaced by an adjective of nationality:

Il parlamēto d' Inghilterra. The English parliament.

L' imperatore di Germánia. The German emperor.

Il Piemönte è una província d' Italia. Piedmont is an Italian province.

(c) Before **Cándia, Cipro, Corfù, Ischia, Malta.**

(6) The article is generally used before a noun qualified by a possessive or a possessive-relative¹ pronoun, or by any adjective excepting one of quantity:

√ I miei libri. My books. La Sua mano. Your hand.

√ La ragazza la di cui mamma è qui. The girl whose mother is here.

I buoni ragazzi sono studiosi. Good boys are studious.²

Ècco la mia mano destra. This is my right hand.

(7) After the verb *avere* in descriptions of physical or spiritual characteristics:

¹ Compare 134, 135, 147 (a).

² This example would also fall under rule (1).

L' Albina ha le mani píccole. A. has small hands.

Ernestino ha il cuore buono. Little E. has a good heart.

(8) Instead of the possessive in cases where there is no danger of ambiguity (see 137 (1)):

Io apro la mano. I open *my* hand.

Chiudo i pugni. I close *my* fists.

Mostrì il bráccio sinistro. Show your left arm.

(9) Before an infinitive or other part of speech used as a noun:

✓ **L' andare ed il tornare.** The going and returning.

✓ **Il bene e il male.** Good and evil.

(10) Before numerals indicating the year without indication of month, etc., also before those indicating the day of the month, and the hour of the day:

✓ **Èra nel mille otto cento (or nel 1800).** It was in 1800.

✓ **È il 13 settembre.** It is the 13th of September.

✓ **La lezione comincia alle nove.** The lesson begins at nine o'clock.

✓ **Sono le undici.** It is eleven o'clock.

(11) Distributively:

(a) In specifying price, etc., where in English the indefinite article is used:

Due lire il metro. Two liras a meter. *Due*

✓ **Uova a trenta soldi la dozzina.** Eggs at thirty cents a dozen.

✓ **Una volta la settimana.** Once a week.

(b) Before the names of the days of the week where in English the plural would be used to indicate a *certain* day of *every* week:

✓ **Ho una lezione il mercoledì e il sábito.** I have a lesson on Wednesdays and on Saturdays.

(12) Before the names of the months when a certain month is specifically indicated¹:

¹ Notice the indication of *time* in (10), (11), and (12).

✓ **Nell' ottobre mille otto cento.**¹ In October (of the year)
1800

45. The definite article being so much more frequent in Italian than in English, it may be easier for a beginner to recollect first the substantive constructions in which it does *not* occur. It is, as we have seen, *not* used before the names of cities, or before those of countries after **in** and **di** with certain meanings. It is further *not* used:

(1) Before a vocative:

✓ **Buon giorno, signor Bernardo.** Good morning, Mr. B.
Sentá, amico mio. Listen, my friend

(2) Before the name of a near relative in the singular and without other modifiers than a possessive:

✓ **Mia madre, mio padre e il mio amico.** My mother, father, and friend.

✓ **Mio fratello e le mie sorelle.** My brother and sisters.

REMARK. But the article *is* used with diminutives, or where the noun has other modifiers than the possessive:

Il mio fratellino è colla mia cara madre. My little brother is with my dear mother.

(3) Before a noun qualified by a demonstrative or numeral adjective:

Mostro quell' uomo. I am pointing at that man.

Ha parecchi libri. He has several books.

Ho due braccia. I have two arms.

(4) Before nouns having a very vague, general sense:

Vende carta e penne. He sells paper and pens.

(a) In certain set phrases. Cf. 136 (2).

(5) Before ordinal numbers used with names of

¹ One might also say: **In ottobre del mille otto cento**, or **Nel mese d'ottobre mille otto cento**, but not **Nell'ottobre del mille otto cento**. Compare rule (10). It will be seen that regard for euphony plays a certain rôle here.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership
provides unlimited
access to more than
28,000 volumes of
Christian literature for
\$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

48. This partitive form is, however, not used where the English "some" or "any" add nothing to the sense:

✓ **Vuole pane?** Do you want (some) bread?

✓ **Vuole del pane?** Do you want some (of the) bread?

REMARKS. (1) The partitive is not used in a negative sentence:

✓ **Ha qualche cosa per me?** Have you something for me?

✓ **Ho della carta, non ho lapis.** I have some paper. I have no pencils.

✓ **Non abbiamo fiori.** We haven't any flowers.

(2) The construction is less frequent in Italian than in French. Its use is seldom obligatory and often arbitrary, varying greatly with the individual.

Syntax of the Indefinite Article.

49. The indefinite article is never used in Italian where it would not be in English.

It is, on the contrary, omitted in Italian where it would be expressed in English:

(1) Before a predicate noun, expressing occupation, rank, or nationality, without qualifiers, and following the verbs *éssere* (to be) and *fare* (to make, do):

(Also *divenire*, *diventare*, *náscere*, *morire*, *mostrarsi*, *parere*, *proclamare*, *sembrare*, *éssere dichiarato*.)

✓ **È Italiano.** He is an Italian.

✓ **È anche príncipe.** He is also a prince.

✓ **Si farà impiegato.** He will become an official. (Literally, "he will make himself.")

REMARK. But a noun accompanied by an adjective, or a noun answering the question "who is he?" (it will be observed that in the examples under (1) all answer "what is he?") takes the article:

- ✓ **È un Italiano patriótico.** He is a patriotic Italian.
 / **È un buon príncipe.** He is a good prince.
 ✓ **Chi è quell' uómo? È un mēdico.** Who is that man?
 He is a doctor (= That is a doctor).

(2) Before a noun in apposition:

- ✓ **Il Tēvere fiume presso Róma.** The Tiber, a river near Rome.

Cēsare Bórgia, uómo senza misericórdia. Cæsar, Borgia, a man without pity.

- ✓ **Dante, gran poēta d' Itália.** Dante, a great Italian poet.

(3) After *da*, meaning "as", "like"¹:

- / **Parlo da amico.** I speak as a friend.

Si travestì quattro vólte, da pellegrino, da marináio, da soldato, da acrobata. He disguised himself four times, as a pilgrim, as a sailor, as a soldier, as an acrobat.

(4) Before the numerals *cento*, "hundred", *mille*, "thousand"²:

- ✓ **Sono cento uómini.** They are, there are, a hundred men.

- ✓ **Dopo mille anni.** After a thousand years.

(5) In certain adverbial expressions, such as:

- × **A casa**, "at home"; **a scuóla** (or **in iñscuola**), "at school"; **in cámera**, "in the bedroom".

(6) In certain exclamations, for which see 157.

(Exercises VI and VII.)

CHAPTER III.

NOUNS, THEIR GENDER AND NUMBER.

50. All Italian nouns are either masculine or feminine (cf. 39). The gender and number are usually indicated by the ending, singular *o*, plural *i* being the typical masculine endings, singular *a*, plural

¹ Cf. French *je parle en ami*.

² Cf. 291 (c).

e the feminine. However, not all masculine nouns end in o, neither do all those ending in o take i in the plural, nor are these endings always proof that the noun exhibiting them is masculine.

GENDER.

General Rules for Gender.

(1) Nouns denoting male and female beings usually keep their natural genders:

✓ **Il re**, the king; ✓ **la regina**, the queen.

Un lavandajo, a fuller; **una lavandaja**, a washerwoman.

Il toro, the bull; **la mia gallina**, my hen.

Tuo padre, thy father; **nostra madre**, our mother.

EXCEPTIONS: **Guárda**, “guard”; **guida**, “guide”; **recluta**, “recruit”; **sentinella**, “sentinel”; **spia**, “spy”, are feminine in spite of the fact that they usually designate male beings. Here the grammatical gender prevails over the natural (compare following paragraph).

(2) Nouns ending in o are masculine, in a feminine.¹

These are, as already noted, the typical endings of the two genders:

✓ **L' ábito**, the coat; ✓ **la camícia**, the shirt, blouse.

✓ **Il naso**, the nose; ✓ **la bocca**, the mouth.

✓ **Il muro**, the wall; ✓ **la stanza**, the room.

EXCEPTIONS: (a) Feminine nouns which are masculine in ending:

¹ Latin masculines and feminines as a rule retain their gender. The common masculine accusative singular **-um** gives **-o**, the feminine accusative singular **-am** > **a**. Nouns coming from Latin neuter singulars are usually masculine, those from the plurals feminine, the endings being here decisive. **Templum** > (il) **témpio**, **folia** < (la) **fóglia**. Masculine nouns in o with a plural in a are remnants of the Latin neuter declension. Cf. 63 and 64.

✓ **La mano**,¹ “the hand”. Also **eco**, “echo”, and a few other rare words:

(b) Masculine nouns of feminine ending:

✓ **Il poeta**, “poet”, **il duca**, “duke”, **il monarca**, “monarch”. Also **colera**, “cholera”, **sofà**, “sofa”, and a few other words of foreign extraction²; **enigma**, “enigma”, **problema**, “problem”, and other words in **-ma** derived from the Greek, many geographical names, and **qualcosa**, “something” (properly a phrase, not single word).

(3) Nouns ending in **u** are feminine:

✓ **la virtù**, “virtue”; ✓ **la gioventù**,³ “youth”; ✓ **la gru**, “crane”.

EXCEPTIONS: A few foreign words, such as ✓ **bambù**, “bamboo”, also other parts of speech used as nouns, as ✓ **il più**,⁴ “more”; and **bau**, “dog’s bark”; **meu**, “fennel”; ✓ **Perù**, “Peru”.

More Special Rules for Gender.

51. Of nouns ending in **e** and **i** some are masculine, some feminine.⁵ The meaning of the word may decide.

(a) Masculine are:

¹ From Latin **manus**, **manum**, which, though a feminine of the fourth declension, exactly resembles in form the masculines of the second.

² Notice that words imperfectly Italianized usually make exceptions. Cf. following paragraph, exceptions, also **24 (a)**, footnote 5, p. 11, etc.

³ Notice that these nouns are names of abstractions. Cf. **51 (b) (1)**.

⁴ Cf. **51 (a) (2)**.

⁵ Since all really Italian nouns end in a vowel, the above classification includes all but a very few substantives, such as **il lapis**, “lead pencil”, etc.

(1) Names of trees, metals, generally of mountains, months, and days:

✓ **Il limone**, lemon-tree. ✓ **Il rame**, copper. **Il San Salvatore**, (mountain of) San S. ✓ **L' Aprile**, April. ✓ **Il martedì**, Tuesday.

REMARK. This rule is constantly crossed by that given in 50 (2) (p. 38). For instance, **le Alpe**, or **Alpi**, "the Alps", probably because the first form would suppose a singular, **Alpa**. Most names of mountains end in **o**, or else **monte**, "mount", "mountain", is understood:

L' Etna, or **Monte Etna**, "Etna".

All the days of the week are masculine except **la domenica**, "Sunday", and all names of metals except **la latta**, "tin".

(2) Other parts of speech used as nouns:

✓ **L' andare e il venire**. Going and coming.

✓ **Il mangiare è buono**. The food is good.

✓ **Mi dava del sì e del no**. He would give me no positive answer. (Literally, "he gave me yes and no".)

(b) Feminine are:

(1) Names of abstractions:

La specie, the species. **L' ambizione**, ambition. **La quiete**, quiet, rest.

(2) Many names of fruits,¹ the same word used as a masculine indicating often the tree:

✓ **Il noce**, the walnut-tree. **La noce**, walnut, nut.

EXCEPTIONS: In a certain number of cases the same masculine word designates as well the fruit as the tree that bears it:

✓ **Il limone**, lemon-tree, lemon.²

¹ This rule is also crossed by 50 (2), the names of many fruits being feminine by termination: **L' arancia**, "the orange"; **una mela**, "an apple". But there exists also the masculine **arancio**, meaning as well the tree as its fruit.

² **Fico** and **dattero**, both masculine by termination, also mean both tree and fruit.

52. A certain number of nouns are indifferently masculine or feminine; as, *il* or *la fine*, "end".

REMARK. The pupil is advised to connect immediately with every substantive learned, whether its gender be according to ordinary rule or exceptional, its appropriate article, and to make them one concept.

Gender of Compound Nouns.

53. Most compound nouns retain the gender of their second component:

La mappa, flat piece of cloth, table-cover.

Il mondo, world. **Il mappamondo**, map of the world.

EXCEPTIONS: There are many, but they are usually explained by an analysis of the word:

✓ **Il capo**, head, chief; ✓ **la caccia**, hunt; **il capocaccia**, master of the hunt. ✓ **Salvare**, to save; ✓ **la gente**, people; ✓ **il salva-gente**, life-preserver. ✓ **Battere**, to beat, thresh out; ✓ **la lana**, wool; **il battilana**, wool-comber. (Cf. 51 (a) (2).)

Formation of the Feminine.

54. (1) Many masculines in *o* and some in *e* form a feminine in *a*:

✓ **Il ragazzo**, the boy; ✓ **la ragazza**, the girl.

✓ **Lo zio**, the uncle; **la zia**, the aunt.

✓ **Il padrone**, the master, proprietor; **la padrona**.

(2) Those in *a* and some in *e* take *essa*:

L' arciduca, the archduke; **l' arciduchessa**, archduchess.

✓ **Il dottore**, doctor; ✓ **la dottoressa**.

✓ **Il poeta**, poet; **la poetessa**.

✓ **Il profeta**, prophet; **la profetessa**.

(3) Most of those in *-tore* take *-trice* (*dottore* being an exception):

✓ **L' imperatore**, the emperor; **l' imperatrice**, the empress.

✓ **Il direttore**, the director; **la direttrice**.

(4) But many masculines and feminines bearing a certain relation to one another are totally different in form:

✓ *L' uoꝃmo*, man; *la d'onna*, woman.

NUMBER.

General Rules for the Formation of the Plural.

55. Masculines in *o* and *a*, masculines and feminines in *e* form their plural by changing these terminations to *i*:

Il libro, *i libri*; *un ragazzo*, *tre ragazzi*; *il poeꝓta*, *i poeꝓti*; *lo zio*, *gli zii*; *il padre*, *i padri*; *la madre*, *le madri*; *uno scolare*, *gli scolari*¹; *la lezione*, the lesson, *le lezioni*; *l' ape*, the bee, *le api*, bees; *l' ipocrita*, hypocrite, *gl' ipocriti*; *il mio nome*, my name, *i nostri nomi*, our names.

REMARKS. (1) Also *la mano*, *le mani*.

(2) In nouns in *-io* the plural may be written *i*, *î*, *ii*, or *j*. In any case only one *i* is pronounced:

✓ *Stúdio*, study; plural *studi*, *studî*, *studii*, *studj*.

56. Feminines in unaccented *a* form their plural in *e*:

✓ *La távola*, the table. ✓ *Delle távole*, some tables.

✓ *La tua penna*, thy pen. ✓ *Le vostre penne*, your pens.

57. Monosyllables and nouns accented on the last syllable (whether the word end in a vowel or consonant), also nouns ending in *i* (stressed or unstressed) and *ie*, do not change in the plural:

✓ *Il bríndisi*, the health, toast. ✓ *Fare molti bríndisi*, to drink many toasts. ✓ *Un dî*, a day; *sette dî*, seven days.

✓ *Un barbagianni*, an owl; *i barbagianni*. ✓ *Il re d' Itália*, the king of Italy. ✓ *I tre re*, the three kings. ✓ *Una me-*

¹ These words being familiar to the pupil are not translated.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



which have an *i* in the singular only to indicate the nature of a *c* or *g* omit that *i* in the plural¹:

Il linguággio, the language, dialect; *i linguaggi d' Itália*.

L' aráncio è bello, the orange-tree is beautiful; *gli aranci sono belli*.

La cáccia, the chase, hunt; *le cacce*.

Una guáncia rósea, a rosy cheek; *le sue guance*,² her cheeks.

62. In the case of masculines in *-co* and *-go* the quality of the *c* or *g* sometimes remains the same in the plural and sometimes changes. In most cases the accentuation may serve as a guide, nouns stressed on the penult taking *-chi*, *-ghi*, those stressed on the antepenult *-ci*, *-gi*:

Un giuóco, a game; *i giuóchi dei bambini*, children's plays.

Il castigo severo, severe punishment, *i castighi*.

Un Franco, a Frank; *i Franchi*. *Il fuóco*, fire; *i fuóchi*.

But:

Il médico, the physician; *i médici tástano il pólso*, doctors feel the pulse. *Il fisiólogo*, the physiologist; *i fisiólogi*.

Il collégio, the college; *i collegi*.

L' equívoco, ambiguous expression, *gli equívoci*.³

¹ See 22, foot-note. This rule of course does not apply to nouns in which the *i* is accented, as *il leggíó*, "reading-desk", pl. *leggíi*; *zio*, *zii*; *la farmacia*, "pharmacy", pl. *farmacie*. In nouns like *ócchio*, "eye", *stúdio*, "study", etc., where the *i* although not accented is sounded, the orthographical usage varies. Formerly *occhj*, *studj* were commoner, now *occhi*, *studi* are more usual. *Occhii*, *studii* are also seen.

² But *províncie*, *audácie* retain the unnecessary *i*.

³ The adjective *equívoco* is treated in the same way, and adjectives in general follow the rule as given for nouns: *público*, "public", pl. *públici*, fem. *pubbliche*; *cattólico*, "Catholic", *cattólici*, *cattóliche*; *diplomatico*, "diplomàtic", *diplomàtici*, *diplomátiche*. Cf. 116.

EXCEPTIONS: There are many exceptions to this rule. Words in **-go** follow it more uniformly¹ than those in **-co**. The student is advised to learn each word and its article in the singular and plural forms. The following are the commonest exceptions:

(a) Words in **-co** stressed on the penult, yet forming their plural in **-ci**:

Un mio amico, a friend of mine; **i nostri amici**, our friends.

Ecco il nemico, here is the enemy; **i miei nemici lo dicono**, my enemies say so. **Il porco**, the pig; **due porci**.

(b) Words in **-co** stressed on the antepenult, yet forming their plural in **-chi**:

Ecco il suo carico, it is his charge; **i carichi**.

Un gran fondaço, a large warehouse; **molti fondachi**.

Il manico del coltello, the knife-handle; **i manichi**.

Lo stomaco, the stomach; **gli stomachi**. **Lo storico della guerra civile**, the historian of the civil war; **gli storici**.

Il tóssico, the poison; **dei tóssichi forti**. **Il tráffico della ferrovia**, railway-traffic; **i tráffichi**.²

REMARKS. (1) **Gręco** as a noun takes **-ci**, as an adjective **chi**:

Un Gręco, a Greek; **i Gręci**, the Greeks.

Un vino gręco, a Greek wine; **vini gręchi**, Greek wines.

So also **mago** in the sense of "wizard" takes a

¹ Yet all those accented on the antepenult excepting **spárago**, "asparagus", taking **-gi** in the plural, possess besides the forms in **-gi** parallel ones in **-ghi**. **Spárago** has only **sparagi**. **Catálogo**, "catalogue", has only **catálogo**hi.

² Other exceptions are so rare as scarcely to belong here. The student is advised to consult his dictionary for plurals of such nouns.

plural **maghi**, but in the expression “the three wise men” it takes **magi**, **i tre re magi**.¹

(2) **Físico**, “natural philosopher”, and **músico**, “musician”, take either **ci** or **chi**.

63. A certain number of masculines in **o** form their plural irregularly in **a** and become feminine. They are:

Il centináio, the hundred (about a hundred); **ne vengono delle centináia**, hundreds of them are coming.

Un migliáio, a thousand or thereabouts; **due migliáia**.²

Un páio, a pair; **due páia**.

Un míglio, a mile; **due míglia**.³

64. Many other masculines in **o** have two plural forms, one in **a** and one in **i**:

Il dito, finger; **le dita** (**i diti**).

Il bráccio, the arm; **ho due bráccia** (**bracci**).⁴

Il calcagno, the heel; **le calcagna** (**le calcagne**, **i calcagni**).

Il ginóccchio, the knee; **le ginóccchia** (**ginóccchie**) (**i ginóccchi**).

Il labbro, the lip; **le labbra** (**i labbri**).

¹ Observe that this latter form is preserved by the Biblical phrase, i.e., **magi** is the Latin plural, **maghi** being made after the singular whose hard **g** it keeps. Naturally a plural is made after a singular only where the latter is the oftener used. In the case of **gręco**, the noun plural was often used, the adjective less often, so only the latter was re-formed.

² Mile, “a thousand”, takes also **le mila**.

³ Notice that these are all nouns designating number in a rather vague way. **Centinaj**, **migliaj**, are sometimes seen.

⁴ The plural most commonly used is placed first. **Bráccia**, **ginóccchia**, **labbra**, **orécchie** (notice this latter in **e**) are generally employed to denote two arms, etc., of the same body. The termination **a** (**e**) has here a sort of collective sense. Compare German nouns beginning with **Ge**.

Il mēmbro, the member; le mēmbra (mēmbre), (i mēmbri).

L' orēcchio, the ear; le orrēcchie (orēcchia), (gli orēcchi).

L' oſso, the bone; le oſsa (oſse), (gli oſsi).

L' uovo, the egg; le uova (gli uovi).¹

REMARK. In some cases the two forms are differentiated in meaning:

Il frutto, fruit; le frutta, fruits; i frutti, profits.

Il legno, wood; i legni, carriages, ships; le legna, firewood.

Il muro, wall; i muri, walls; le mura, city-walls.

Il mēmbro, the member.

Le bráccia sono mēmbri del corpo umano. The arms are members of the human body. Una commissione di sette mēmbri. A committee of seven members.

But:

Le mēmbra del corpo. The members (all the members) of the body.

65. Plurals altogether irregular.

L' ala, the wing; le ali (le ale).

Il bue, ox; i buoi.

Il dio, god; gli dei or dii (with which the article is always gli).

La moglie, wife; le mogli

L' uomo, man; gli uomini.

PLURAL OF COMPOUND NOUNS.

66. Most compound nouns change their ending in the regular way, i.e., the second component is made plural, the first remaining unchanged:

Il mappamondo, map of the world; i mappamondi.

Il parafuoco, fire-screen; i parafuochi.

¹ There are many other nouns which may take the two plurals. Observe that such are usually Latin neuters which have their plural in a. In such the i forms are later. But the formation has extended to other words. Cf. 50, (2) foot-note.

EXCEPTIONS: There are many, most of which may, however, be explained by an analysis of the word (cf. 53):

Il capocáccia, master of the hunt; **i capicáccia**.

Il battilana, wool-comber; **i battilana**.

Il portaléttere, the letter-carrier; **i portaléttere**.

But in other cases the explanation must be sought in the fact that in some compounds the components are still felt to be independent words and are inflected as such, while in others one or both of them has lost its individual life. In other words, the fusion is more or less complete:

Il sordomuto, the deaf-mute; **i sordomuti**.

But:

La mezza-luna, crescent; **le mezze-lune**.

La madreperla, mother-of-pearl; **le madreperle** or **le madriperle**.

Il sottolume, lamp-mat; **i sottolumi**.

Il rompicapo, tormentor; **i rompicapo**.

(Exercises X and XI.)

CHAPTER IV.

REGULAR VERBS.¹

67. All Italian verbs end in the present infinitive in **-re**. The vowel preceding this syllable may be **a**,

¹ The regular verbs are placed before the auxiliaries because the latter are irregular and it is considered desirable for the student to familiarize himself first with the regular forms. Teachers who prefer to do so may take Chapter V before this one. The present tenses of the auxiliaries have been given (Vocabulary to Exercises I and II), and isolated participial forms are also given in other vocabularies. It being taken for granted that the student of Italian knows the parts, moods, tenses, etc., of verbs, no explanation of such matters is given.

e (accented or unaccented), or i. This vowel, which is called the characteristic vowel, recurs throughout the conjugation.

Verbs are divided according to their characteristic vowel into:

(1) **-are** verbs, or first conjugation.

(2) **-ére** and **'-ere** verbs, or second conjugation.

(3) **-ire** verbs, or third conjugation:

Mostrare. To show, point out. **Temére,** to fear. **Pérdere,** to lose. **Partire,** to go away, set out (*also* to divide).

68. The rôle played by the characteristic vowel, which constitutes, as we have seen, the main difference between the conjugations, is seen in the following tables. The part of the infinitive preceding the characteristic vowel is the **stem**, the characteristic vowel and what follows it the **ending** of the infinitive. The various parts of the verb are formed by adding various terminations to the stem.

TABLE OF VERBS.

INFINITIVE.

	Mostr are	Tem ére	Pérd ere	Part ire¹
Present Participle	mostr ando²	tem ęndo²	perd ęndo	part ęndo²
Past Participle	mostr ato³	tem uto⁴	perd uto	part ito

¹ Sometimes transitive = "to divide", but usually intransitive = "to depart".

² There are also forms **mostr ante**, **tem ęnte**, **part ęnte**, which, though really representing the Latin participles (the forms in **-ando**, **-ęndo** being gerunds), are much less frequent, and which may be regarded as verbal adjectives. Cf. **III**. **Ięnte** for **-ęnte** (= **ęndo**) appears only in **finięnte**, **impedięnte**, **lenięnte**, **obbedięnte**, **partorięnte**, sometimes **aperięnte** and **morięnte**.

³ The past participle of a few verbs of the first conjugation is sometimes contracted, especially in poetry, showing **o** for **-ato**, **desto** = **destato**, etc. For compound tenses cf. 76.

⁴ Notice that this is the only one of the three conjugations showing a past participle with an accented vowel other than its characteristic vowel.

Indicative

PRESENT.

I¹ show, am showing, etc.

mostr o ¹	tem o	perd o	part o, I depart, <i>or</i> part isco, I divide
mostr i ²	tem i	perd i	part i <i>or</i> part isci
mostr a ²	tem e	perd e	part e <i>or</i> part isce
mostr iamo	tem iamo	perd iamo	part iamo
mostr ate ²	tem ete	perd ete	part ite
mostr ano ³	tem ono	perd ono	part ono <i>or</i> part iscono

IMPERFECT.

I showed, was showing, etc.

mostr ava ⁴	tem eva ⁵	perd eva, ⁶ etc.	part iva ⁵
mostr avi	tem evi		part ivi
mostr ava	tem eva		part iva
mostr avamo	tem evamo		part ivamo
mostr avate	tem evate		part ivate
mostr avano	tem evano		part ivano

¹ The subject pronoun is omitted. Cf. 88.

² For the use of these forms ("you show") cf. 91.

³ This -o, as also final -no in the third plural future of all conjugations, is often dropped: *mostran*, "they show", *temeran*, "they will fear", etc.

⁴ O is very frequently used (indeed almost universally where there is danger of ambiguity) instead of this -a as the final vowel of the first singular imperfect of all conjugations.

⁵ Verbs of the second and third conjugations (never of the first) often drop the v of the imperfect: *io temeà*, *egli partia*, etc.

⁶ It being sufficiently evident that *perdere* is conjugated precisely like *temere*, the forms of the latter only will henceforth be given. (For the parallel irregular form of *perdere* see alphabetical table, p. .) The second conjugation comprises the verbs of both the second and third Latin conjugations. In other words, the second conjugation in Italian comprises verbs different in the infinitive but alike in all other parts. The third, on the contrary, comprises verbs alike in all parts save the present indicative and subjunctive, but different in these, i.e., it consists of: (a) verbs of the Latin fourth conjugation; (b) Latin inchoatives. The latter are now much the more numerous, i.e., most -ire verbs have passed into the inchoative conjugation.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books' Full Membership provides unlimited access to more than 28,000 volumes of Christian literature for \$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

mōstr i ¹	tēm a	{ part a, I may depart, part isca, I may divide
mōstr i	tēm a	{ part a, thou mayest depart, part isca, thou mayest divide
mōstr i	tēm a	{ part a, he may depart, part isca, he may divide
mostr iamo	tem iamo	part iamo
mostr iate	tem iate	part iate
mōstr ino	tēm ano	{ part ano, they may depart, part íscano, they may divide

Imperfect.

mostr assi	tem ęssi	part issi
mostr assi	tem ęssi	part issi
mostr asse	tem ęsse	part isse
mostr ássimo	tem ęssimo	part íssimo
mostr aste	tem ęste	part iste
mostr ássero	tem ęssero	part íssero

Remarks on Regular Verbs of the First Conjugation.

69. (1) Verbs ending in **-care** and **-gare** insert an **h** after the **c** or **g** before endings beginning with **e** or **i** in order to mark the preservation of the hard sound²:

Dimenticare, to forget; **non diméntichi**, do not forget; **dimenticherò**, I shall forget. **Pagare**, to pay; **non desídero che paghiate niente**, I do not desire that you pay anything; **pághino loro**, let them pay.

(2) Verbs in **-ciare**, **-giare**, **sciare** in which the **i** is inserted merely to keep the **c**, **g**, **sc** soft before the next sounded vowel, which is **a**, drop this **i** in parts where the termination contains an **i** or an **e**³:

Cominciare, to begin, commence; **comíncio**, I am be-

¹ The subjunctive present is indicated by a *change of the characteristic vowel*, the first conjugation taking that theretofore characteristic of the third, the third with the second, that of the first.

² Cf. 16 and 59.

³ Cf. 22, foot-note 3, and 61.

ginning; **comincerèbbe**, he would begin. **Passeggiare**, to take a walk; **passéggino**, let them go to walk; **passeggerò anch' io**, I shall also take a walk. **Lasciare**, to leave, let; **lasci stare**, let it alone. **Bruciare**, to burn; **brucerà**, it will burn.

(3) Verbs in **-chiare** and **-gliare** drop the **i** only before an **i** in the termination, not before an **e**:

Picchiare, to knock; **picchi** (*not* **picchii**), thou knockest, *but* **picchierò**, I shall knock.¹ **Consigliare**, to counsel; **consiglierebbe**, he would advise; **consigli**, let him advise.

(4) Of other verbs in **-iare** those retain this **i**:

(a) In which it has in the infinitive a secondary accent, the secondary accent becoming in the indicative present first singular the principal one:

Desiare,² to desire; **io desio**, **tu desii**. **Spiare**, to spy, **io spio**, **che spino**.

(b) In which there might be confusion with another verb:

Odiare, to hate, **tu ódii**, *not* **odi**, which latter = "thou hearest" (from **udire**).

(c) **Appropriare**, **contrariare**, **sentenziare**, **spaziare**, **strabiliare** also commonly show the **ii**. Others drop the **i** before an ending beginning with **i**, retaining it before **e**:

Annoiare,³ to annoy; **tu annoi**, **tu annoierai**.

(5) Certain verbs having an open **o** in the first syllable diphthongize it where it receives the accent (i.e., in the three persons of the singular and third person plural of the present indicative and subjunctive and in the imperative second person singular):

Giocare,⁴ to play, **io giuoco**.

¹ The second **i** in **picchierò** is distinctly heard.

² That this **i** has a secondary accent is evident from the fact that the verb is a contracted form of **desiderare**.

³ This **i** is really a semi-consonant.

⁴ Besides **giocare**, **arrolare**, **infocare**, **rotare**, and **sonare** exhibit

Remarks on Regular Verbs of the Second Conjugation.

70. (1) Verbs ending in **-cere** and **-gere** insert an **i** to keep the **c** or **g** soft before the **u** of the past participle, not, however, before terminations beginning with **a** or **o**, in which latter case the **c** or **g** becomes hard:

Páscere,¹ to feed, pasture, **pasco**, **ch' egli pasca**, **pasciuto**.

(2) There are but few regular verbs in this conjugation,² and these present, for the most part, the double forms given in the table for the preterit. The forms in **-ei**, **-é**, **-érono** are really the regular ones, corresponding to the **-ai** of the first conjugation, **-ii** of the third. The following verbs and their compounds take only the **-ei**, **-é**, **-érono**: **báttere**, **compétere**, **convergere**, **divergere**, **lúcere**, **méscere**, **miétere**, **páscere**, **prúdere**, **ripétere**, **strídere**, **téssere**, **tøndere**³; also **cómpiere** and **émpiere** when of this conjugation (they are frequently inflected according to the third).

this change, also frequently **rinnovare** and **tonare**, and, rarely, **provare** and **trovare**. **Notare**, "to notice", never does, in order, probably, not to be confused with **nuotare**, "to swim". The same may be said of **votare** and **vuotare**.

¹ This and **méscere** are the only regular verbs exhibiting all these forms. Of the irregular some exhibit them all, as, **créscere**, **creſco**, **cresciuto** (but pret. **creſſi**); **conóscere**, **conosco**, **conosciuto** (but pret. **conosſi**); others only a part, as **tacére**, **taccio**, **taciuto**; **piángere**, **piango**, pret. **piansi**; past participle **pianto**, etc. See Table of Irregular Verbs.

² The entirely regular are: **báttere**, **cédere**, **compétere**, **crédere**, **féndere**, **gémere**, **godére**, **méscere**, **miétere**, **páscere**, **péndere**, **pérdere**, **prémere**, **ricévere**, **rifléttere**, **ripétere**, **spléndere**, **temére**, **tøndere**, **véndere**, also **cómpiere** and **émpiere** when of this conjugation. See Table. It will be seen later that the great majority of the irregular verbs are **'-ere** verbs of this conjugation.

³ Many of these verbs are defective.

(3) Some verbs having an open o in the first syllable present the same phenomenon remarked under 69, (5):

Cuócere or **cócere**, to cook; **cuoço**, **coceva**. **Muóvere** or **móvere**, to move; **muovo**, **moveva**.

These verbs are otherwise irregular.

Remarks on Regular Verbs of the Third Conjugation.

71. Most verbs of this conjugation take in the present indicative and subjunctive the **-isco** endings, not having the **-o**, **-i**, **-e** endings at all. The following is the model for their present tenses.

Capire, to understand.

capisco , I understand,	capiamo
capisci	capite
capisce	capíscono
capisca , I may understand,	capiamo
capisca	capiate
capisca	capíscano
capisci , understand (thou). ¹	

(a) The following regular verbs take the o forms only:

Dormire, to sleep; **fuggire**, to fly, flee; **partire** in the sense of “to depart”; **pentire**,² **sentire**, to feel, hear; **servire**, to serve; **sortire**,³ in the sense of “to go out”; **vestire**, to clothe.

¹ These forms are derived from the Latin inchoatives, hence perhaps their use in the present only, “I understand,—am beginning to understand”.

² **Pentire** is a reflexive verb. See 106.

³ **Sortire**, “to draw lots”, as **partire**, “to divide”, takes the **-isco** forms. Notice that in both cases it is the *transitive* verb that takes the **-isco** forms.

(b) The following verbs may take either termination, but usually take **-isco**:

Abborrire, to abhor; **bollire**, to boil; **inghiottire**, to swallow; **languire**, to languish; **mentire**, to lie; **muggire**, to bellow; **nutrire**, to nourish; **ruggire**, to roar; **sorbire**, to sip; **tossire**, to cough; also verbs in **-vertire**, as **avvertire**, **divertire**, etc.¹

(c) **Proseguire**, “to prosecute, pursue”, has usually **proséguo**, but sometimes **proseguisco**.

72. The verb is more interrogative by placing the pronoun (if expressed) or other subject after it:

Voi mostrate, you show; **mostrerete voi?** Shall you show?

Non partirà vostro fratello? Will not your brother go away?

73. The imperfect tense is used to express unfinished, habitual, or repeated action, the preterit to express that which was finished at a certain time, which time is quite past²:

Io mostravo il libro quando entrò. I was showing the book when he entered.

(Exercises XII and XIII.)

CHAPTER V.

AUXILIARY VERBS.

74. The principal auxiliary verbs in Italian are **èssere**, “to be”, and **avere**, “to have”. Both are irregular, but especially the first.

¹ A number of irregular verbs, such as **aprire**, **coprire**, **offrire**, **soffrire**, **cucire**, and its compounds, also belong to this class. See Table.

² Cf. 226 and 228.

INFINITIVE.

Èssere

Present Participle.
essendo

Past Participle.
statò

INDICATIVE.

Present.	Imperfect.	Preterite.	Future.
sono	era	fui	sarò
sei	eri	fosti	sarai
è	era	fu	sarà
siamo	eravamo	fummo	saremo
siete	eravate	foste	sarete
sono	erano	fúrono	saranno

CONDITIONAL.

sarèi
sarèsti
sarèbbe
sarèmmo
sarèste
sarèbbero

IMPERATIVE.

sii (sia), be (thou)
siate, be (you)

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.	Imperfect.
sia	fossi
sia	fossi
sia	fosse
siamo	fossimo
siate	foste
siano ¹	fossero

INFINITIVE.

Avère

Present Participle.
avendo

Past Participle.
avuto

INDICATIVE.

Present.	Imperfect.	Preterite.	Future.	Conditional.
ho	aveva ²	ebbi	avrò	avrèi ⁴
hai	avevi	avesti ³	avrà	avrèsti
ha	aveva	ebbe	avrà	avrèbbe
abbiamo	avevamo	avemmo	avremo	avrèmmo
avete	avevate	aveste	avrete	avrèste
hanno	avévano	ebbero	avranno	avrèbbero

¹ Síeno is also used.

² These forms are regular.

³ This and the first and second plural are regular.

These forms are regular, averèi being contracted into avrèi, etc.

Cf. 174 and 177.

IMPERATIVE.

abbi

abbiate

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

ábbia

abbi (ábbia)

ábbia

abbiamo

abbiate

ábbiano

Imperfect.¹

avessi

avessi

avesse

avéssimo

aveste

avéssero

75. Each of these verbs forms its compound tenses by compounding with itself.

Sono stato qui. I have been here.

Sono state qui le Sue sorelle? Have your sisters been here?

Aveva avuto il denaro. He had had the money.

Use of Auxiliary Verbs.

76. *Avére* + the past participle forms the compound tenses of all transitive and of most intransitive verbs. Following is a synopsis of the compound tenses of *mostrare*:

Infinitive.

avére mostrato, to have shown.

Past participle.

avendo mostrato, having shown.

Past indefinite.

ho mostrato, I have shown, etc.

Pluperfect.

aveva mostrato, I had shown, etc.

Future anterior.

avrò mostrato, I shall have shown, etc.

Conditional anterior.

avrei mostrato, I should have shown, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Past indefinite. *ábbia mostrato, I may have shown, etc.*

Pluperfect. *avessi mostrato, I might have shown, etc.*

77. *Essere* + the past participle forms the compound tenses of all reflexive and reciprocal verbs and of some

¹ Which is regular throughout.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



SUBJUNCTIVE.

Past indefinite. **sia andato**, *I may have gone*, etc.

Pluperfect. **fossi andato**, *I might have gone*, etc.

REMARKS. (1) It will be observed that **éssere** is more frequent than the English "to be", although it is not used to express the progressive present, English "I am showing", etc., which is to be translated simply **mostrando**.¹

(2) A past participle used with **éssere** to form the passive always agrees with the subject of the verb. If the verb be intransitive by nature (compounding with **éssere** in the sense of "to have") it also agrees with the subject. In the case of reflexive or reciprocal verbs it may, but does not always, agree. (Cf. 103 and 114.)

È molto amata. *She is much beloved.*

Sono partiti. *They have departed.*

Ci siamo amati. *We have loved one another.*

Auxiliary with Intransitive Verbs.

78. All really transitive verbs, i.e., all verbs that require a direct object to complete their meaning, form their compound tenses with **avére**, and have a passive voice formed from **éssere**. All reflexive or reciprocal verbs form their compound tenses with **éssere**. (Cf. 102.) All really intransitive verbs, i.e., verbs which cannot take a direct object and which have no passive voice, form their compound tenses with **éssere**, with the exception of the verbs:

¹ *Stare* and *andare*, however, are sometimes used to express the progressive action. Cf. 81 (a) and (d) (1).

desinare, to dine.

dormire, to sleep.

passaggiare, to walk.

sbadigliare, to yawn.

sonnecchiare, to slumber, doze.

sternutare, to sneeze.

79. The commonest necessarily intransitive verbs which always take *éssere* are:

andare, to go.

arrivare, to arrive.

avvenire, to happen.

cadére, to fall.

comparire, to appear.

córrere, to run.

divenire, to become.

morire, to die.

náscere, to be born.

parére, to appear.

pervenire, to arrive.

rimanére, to remain.

riuscire, to succeed.

uscire, to go out.

venire, to come.

(a) A certain number of intransitive verbs compound sometimes with *avére* and sometimes with *éssere*, the general distinction being that they take *avére* when action is denoted, while *éssere* denotes the state or condition resulting from action. With *avére* the verb has usually an object, often an infinitive, to complete its meaning, with *éssere* it has not.

80. Verbs which take either *avére* or *éssere* are:

camminare, to walk.

cessare, to cease.

créscere, to grow.

degenerare, to degenerate.

dimorare, to dwell.

fuggire, to flee.

giúngere, to arrive.

invecchiare, to grow old.

partire, to depart, divide.

passare, to pass.

perire, to perish.

ritornare, to return.

scappare, to escape.

scéndere, to descend.

succédere, to succeed, happen.

tacére, to be silent.

vívere, to live.

La guerra è cessata. The war has ceased.

La guerra ha cessato di devastare i paesi. The war has ceased to devastate the lands.

Other Verbs Used as Auxiliaries.

81. Other verbs sometimes used instead of *éssere* for English "to be" are:

(a) **Stare**, "to stand", which always expresses a state, frequently a state of health.

Stava parlando. I was talking.

Come sta? How are you, how do you do?

Sta male. He is not well.

Stare per or **éssere per** (followed by an infinitive) means "to be about to do a thing".

Sto per mostrarlo. I am just going to show it.

(b) **Venire**, "to come", which is sometimes used in the formation of the simple tenses of the passive¹:

L'ombrello venne trovato. The umbrella was found.

(c) **Rimanére**, "to remain", is used like **venire**, but less frequently:

Rimango arrestato. I am arrested (=I remain in a state of arrest).

(d) **Andare**,² "to go", is used to express:

(1) A state or condition:

Chè andate cercando? What are you looking for?
(Literally, "What do you go seeking?")

(2) Duty or obligation:

Non va detto così. That must not be said, it cannot be so expressed.

Se aveva fatto bene, andava incorragito. If he had done well he ought to have been encouraged.

¹ **Venire** expresses the action indicated by the principal verb more than does **éssere**, and is often preferred to it in elegant style. Neither **venire** nor **rimanére** are ever used in the compound tenses. **Il libro è venuto trovato**, for **è stato trovato**, would be barbarous.

² Notice that, like **stare**, **andare** when it expresses a state takes the present participle.

L' amicizia va coltivata con tutta la possibile delicatezza. L' amore va superato colla forza. Friendship must be cultivated with all possible delicacy. Love must be conquered by force.

82. **Dovère**, "to owe", **potère**, "to be able", **volère**, "to wish", **fare**, "to do", "make", and sometimes **sapère**, "to know", must be classed as modal auxiliaries, since they have, when followed by an infinitive, a sort of auxiliary function. "Ought", "should", "must", etc., are rendered by the appropriate tenses of **dovère**; "may", "might", "can", "could", by those of **potère**; "will", "would", when they express volition, not simple futurity, by those of **volère**; "can", "could", etc., by those of **sapère**. These verbs are all irregular,¹ but not defective as are the English modal auxiliaries, so that shades of meaning, as well as time of action, may be more exactly rendered by them than by the English equivalents²:

Devo partire. I ought to go, must go (in the present).

Dovrei partire. I ought to go (which does not mean "I must go", and is less precise as to time than **devo partire**)³.

Doveva partire. I had to go.

Avrei dovuto partire. I ought to have gone.

Posso partire? May I go?

Voglio partire. I will go.

Non so nuotare. I cannot swim.

Il bambino non sapeva ancora discorrere. The child could not yet talk.

¹ See Table of Irregular Verbs.

² Compare the German modal auxiliaries *können*, *mögen*, etc., which are also complete in their conjugations.

³ One would say **devo partire** perhaps on rising to go, **dovrei partire** without going immediately.

REMARK. The same idea of ability rendered in the last two examples by *sapere* is sometimes idiomatically expressed by *essere buono a*:

Sono buona a sonare il pianoforte. I can play the piano.

83. *Fare*, “to do”, “to make”, and *lasciare*, “to let”, are auxiliaries in such expressions as: *Farò fare un abito*, “I am going to have a coat made”; *lascia fare*, “let it be done”, “let it be”; *l'ho fatto fare*, “I have had it done”.

REMARKS. (1) *Fare* is used to express the idea rendered in English by the verb “to be” in such expressions as *molto tempo fa*, “it is a long time ago”: *fa bel tempo*, “it is beautiful weather”. But *essere* is used in: *è l'una*, “it is one o'clock”; *sono le undici*, “it is eleven o'clock”.

(2) “There is”, “there are”, must be translated where *ecco* is not used by *vi è*, *vi sono*, *c'è*, *ci sono*:

Vi sono tre bottiglie. There are three bottles. *C'è molto da fare.* There is a great deal to do.

Idiomatic Uses of *Avere*.

84. *Avere* is used in the following expressions where the English uses the verb “to be”:

<i>avere bisogna (di)</i> ² , to be in need of, to need.	<i>avere freddo</i> , to be cold.
<i>avere fame</i> , to be hungry.	<i>avere paura</i> , to be afraid.
<i>avere sete</i> , to be thirsty.	<i>avere vergogna</i> , to be ashamed.
<i>avere caldo</i> , to be warm.	<i>avere qualche cosa</i> , to be the matter with.

Aevate paura? Were you afraid? *No, aveva fame.* No, I was hungry.

¹ For *ci*, cf. 36, note 4.

² Cf. 212 (2).

Cos' ha? Non ho niente. What is wrong with you?
Nothing.

Also:

(a) In expressions denoting age:

Che età ha? How old is he? **Ha sette anni.** He is seven.

(b) With **da** and an infinitive to express obligation,
= "to have to":

Ho da parlare. I must speak.

Aveva da partire. He had to go.

(Exercises XIV and XV.)

CHAPTER VI.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS. DISJUNCTIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

85. There are in Italian two kinds of personal pronouns: (1) the tonic or stressed; (2) the atonic or unstressed. The tonic may be separated in the sentence from the verb, or may appear without a verb. This fact that they are *not joined* to the verb has given them the name of *disjunctive, absolute, or independent* pronouns. The atonic forms are so dependent on the verb that they always appear joined to it. They are therefore called *conjunctive or dependent* personal pronouns.

REMARK. The nature of these two classes of pronouns¹ may be made clearer by the following examples: **Mostro,**

¹ Which are simply the different forms of one and the same Latin word, developed under different circumstances, *mē* emphasized giving *me*, unemphatic *mi*. Cf. the different pronunciation of English "me" and "him" in "give it to me", "give it to him", and "give it to me, not to him".

“I am *showing*”. **Chi mostra?** “*Who* is showing?” **Io!**
Io mostro. “I! I am showing.” **Che cosa mostra?**
 “*What* are you showing?” **Mostro me,**¹ “I am showing
myself.” All of these pronouns, emphasized in English,
 are rendered in Italian by the disjunctive forms. But in
Mi mostro, “I am *showing* myself”; **Che cosa fai?** “What
 are you doing?” **Mi ti mostro**, “I am *showing* myself to
 you”, there is no stress laid upon the pronoun, therefore
 in Italian the conjunctive forms are used.

Disjunctive Personal Pronouns.

86. The disjunctive pronouns are²:

io, I	noi, we, us
me, me	
tu, thou	voi, you
te, thee	
egli, ³ lui, esso, he	eglino, ⁶ loro, essi, they
lui, esso, him	loro, essi, them
ella, ⁴ lei, essa, ⁵ she (you)	elleno, ⁵ loro, esse, they
lei, essa, ⁵ her (you)	loro, esse, them
se, himself, herself, themselves	

87. These forms are always more or less emphatic.
 They are used:

(a) As the subject of a verb.

(b) As the object either emphasized or governed by
 a preposition.

¹ Or *me stesso*.

² The personal pronouns are the only real declension forms left
 in Italian.

³ Sometimes shortened into *ei* or *gli*.

⁴ Sometimes shortened to *la*: **Ti raccomando una buona sedia.**—**Se
 la vi sarà.** Be careful to get a good carriage.—If there is one.

⁵ *Ella, lei*, are used for “you”, but *essa* is not.

⁶ Seldom used in modern Italian.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership
provides unlimited
access to more than
28,000 volumes of
Christian literature for
\$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

“you”, for the plural. At present the following are in use:

Sing.	{	tu vòi Èlla ¹ Lèi ¹	Plur.	{	vòi Loro ¹
-------	---	--	-------	---	--------------------------

Of these **tu** (generally to be translated “you”) is used in addressing a near relative, an intimate friend, or a child; also in elevated or poetical language and to express anger or scorn; **vòi** as a plural in addressing two or more relatives, friends, or children, also as a singular somewhat less familiar than **tu** yet less formal than **Èlla**, **Lèi**, used, for instance, in addressing servants. Its use is also frequent in poetry, and in the south of Italy it is more frequently employed than **Èlla** even in speaking with strangers. Excepting in the south the ordinary form of address is **Èlla**, plural **Loro**. These forms were originally of the third person, representing some such antecedent as **Signorìa**, **Vossignorìa**, “Your Highness”, **Eccellenza**, **Altezza**, etc. All such words being feminine, the pronoun was naturally feminine.² (Cf. 89.)

Vossignorìa vuòl cenare? Your Highness wishes to sup?
Èlla è servita. She is served (i.e., “you are served”).

(a) **Èlla** is the proper grammatical form in this case, but **Lèi**, really a dative form, has come into common use, supplanting **Èlla**, especially in conversation.

Loro (**Lor signori**, **Lor signore**) is the corresponding plural:

Loro verranno. You will come.

¹ Also written with a small initial, **ella**, **lei**, **loro**.

² An adjective or participle qualifying **Èlla**, **Lei** takes the gender of the person represented by that pronoun. Thus one would say in speaking to a man: **Lèi è troppo buono** (*not buona*).

This use of the third for the second person corresponds in origin to our own formal usage, but is much more extended and not really formal now. It is the ordinary form of address and the only one the foreigner is likely ever to hear addressed to him or to need when speaking. He should learn to recognize all the forms and the shades of meaning conveyed by them, but should in practice confine himself to the **Ella, Lei, Loro** forms:

E tu figliuolo mio, che diventerai? And what will become of you, my son? **O figli miei, voi che siete stati la mia speranza.** O my children, you who have been my hope.

Come state, poverino? How do you do, you poor man?

E Lei,¹ Signor Bardi, come sta? And how do you do, Mr. B.?

Stanno bene Loro tutti? Are you all well?

92. **Me, te, se** are often compounded with the preposition **con**: **meco**, "with me", **seco**, "by himself"², etc. Occasionally **con** is placed also before this compound³:

Vieni meco (con meco). Come with me.

(a) **Esso** may also be used redundantly with **meco, teco, seco**; (**con**) **noi, voi, lui, lei, loro**:

Restate con esso noi. Stay with us.

E con esso lui se n'andò nel giardino. And he went away with him into the garden.

¹ This pronoun is omitted under the same circumstances as the others, the context showing whether the verb is to be translated with "you", "he", or "she" as subject.

² **Seco** may = **con lui**: **Ho inteso, parlerò seco.** I understand, I shall speak with him. Corresponding forms of the plural are the rare, poetical **nosco** and **vosco** (compounds not of **noi** and **voi**, but of the archaic **nos**, **vos**).

³ Cf. Spanish **conmigo, contigo, consigo**.

(b) **Altri** is frequently added to **noi**, **voi**, in speaking of a whole class of persons¹:

Venite meco voialtri. Come with me, all of you.

Noi altri (or noialtri) Romani siamo altièri. We Romans are proud.

93. The reflexive **se** is objective only. The subject forms "I myself", "we ourselves", etc., are rendered by adding the adjectives **stesso** or **medesimo** to the pronoun:

Andrò io medesimo. I shall go myself.

Loro stessi sono qui. They themselves are here.

Ma signore, Loro medesime l'hanno detto! But, ladies! you said so yourselves.

But:

L'ha fatto da se. He (she) did it by himself (herself).

Sono partiti da se. They have gone away by themselves (or: of their own free will).

94. "It", the subject of an impersonal verb, never being in the slightest degree emphatic, is not expressed in Italian²:

Piùve, non è vero?³ It is raining, isn't it?

95. Although these pronouns have distinct case

¹ Cf. Spanish **nosotros**, **vosotros**, now meaning simply "we", "you". The "we'uns", "you'uns" of the Tennessee mountaineer might also be adduced.

² But a somewhat less impersonal "it" may be rendered by **gli** (86, foot-note 3): **Gli è teço cortesia l'èsser villano** (Orlando Furioso, 27, 77). "It is courtesy to be rude with thee" (literally, "it, the being rude with thee, is courtesy"). **Ella (la)** is also used in a sort of neuter sense: **In verità, ella è così.** "In truth it is so". **La serèbbe bella.** "That would be nice" (sarcastically).

³ This expression, **non è vero**, literally "is it not true", is constantly used in Italian. It is a mere call for assent on the part of the hearer, which call is rendered in English by repeating the verb.

forms for the subjective and objective, the objective is often used as subject. It is so used:

(a) With the verb *essere* in phrases where there might be some uncertainty as to the construction, as in the case of predicate pronouns and where the subject is really understood with the verbal form and then repeated for the sake of emphasis (redundant construction). Observe also the almost constant use of *Lui*, "you", as a nominative (91 (a)):

Costui ch'è un altro me. That one who is my other self.

Esso credeva ch'io fossi te. He thought I was you.

Ma te, tu sei più giovane di me. But you are younger than I.

Tanto i suoi fratelli ch'è lui sono molto cortesi. Both he and his brothers are very polite.

Sta bene Lei? Are you well?

But where there is no uncertainty as to the construction, i.e., where there is a verb expressed with only one pronoun near it, the construction is like the English one:

*Sono io.*¹ It is I. *Sono essi.* It is they.

(b) Absolutely, i.e., where there is no verb expressed, with the pronouns of the third person only:

Sfortunata Lei! You unfortunate one!

Studiose come lui non conosco altri. I know no one else as studious as he (is).

(Exercises XVI and XVII.)

¹ Contrast French *c'est moi*. The objective for subjective is oftener used in conversation than in writing. The substitution is oftenest made in the forms for the third person. Cf. below, (b).

CHAPTER VII.

CONJUNCTIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS. REFLEXIVE VERBS.

96. Pronominal particles or conjunctive personal pronouns, as their name indicates, cannot be separated from the verb of which they are the object, either direct or indirect, without a preposition.

The forms found correspond to the unstressed accusative and dative cases. They are:

mi	=	disjunctive mę , a mę , me, myself, to me, to myself
tę	=	" tę , a tę , thee, thyself, to thee, to thyself
lọ¹	=	" lui , ęsso , him, it
gli	=	" a lui , to him
la	=	" lęi , ęssa , her (you)
lę	=	" a lęi , to her (to you)
si	=	" sę , a sę , himself, herself, themselves, to himself, to herself, to themselves
ci²	=	" nọi , a nọi , us, ourselves, to us, to ourselves
vi	=	" vọi , a vọi , you, yourself, yourselves, to you, to yourself, to yourselves
gli or li³	=	" lọro , them, to them (masculine)
lę	=	" lọro , them, to them (feminine)
lọro⁴	=	" a lọro , to them

¹ Il is sometimes used in place of this lọ, especially in older Italian and in poetry. Both forms must be carefully distinguished from the article il, lọ.

² Ne is sometimes used instead of this ci, especially in older Italian.

³ Gli is the indirect object, li the direct, but gli is often used instead of li before a vowel, a liquid consonant, h, or s impure.

⁴ The right of this form to be called conjunctive may be dis-

97. To these must be added the pronominal adverbs: **ne**,¹ of it, of him, of her, of them, some, any, hence, thence; **ci**,² **vi**,^{2,3} to it, here, there.

Mi vede. He sees me. **Mi lavo.** I am washing myself. **Mi dà un fiore.** He gives me (=to me) a flower. **Ti dicono.** They tell thee. **Lò vede.** I see him. **Gli do il calamáio.** I give him (=to him) the ink-stand. **Lè parlavi?** Did you speak to her? **Si vede.** He sees himself, he is seen, people see him.⁴ **Si párlano.** They are talking to one another. **Ci cêrcano.** They are looking for us. **Vi vedeva di rado.** I seldom saw you. **Ne hò (or n' hò).** I have some of it. **Vi è (or v' è, c' e').** There is (some).

N.B. To be emphasized these pronouns must all be replaced by the corresponding disjunctive forms, as: **vede me non te**, "he sees me, not you"; **partirò con lui**.

Remarks on the Conjunctive Pronouns.

98. (1) **Lò**⁵ and **ne**, and less often other conjunctives, are sometimes used where in English they would be pleonastic:

puted. It must always follow the verb (cf. 99). It is **loro** disjunctive, but used without a preposition: **Gli dico**, or (more emphatic) **dico loro**, or (still more emphatic) **dico a loro**, "I tell them".

¹ =French **en** (<**inde**).

² In function as in meaning both forms =French **y**.

³ All the monosyllabic forms are subject to elision, **lò**, **gli**, **la**, **lè** (these last also when = "you", "to you") under the same circumstances as when articles; **mi**, **ti**, **si**, **vi**, **ne** before any vowel, **ci** only before **e** and **i**. Cf. 36.

⁴ Cf. 104 and 105.

⁵ This **lò** is one of the very few neuter forms left to the Italian. It may represent a whole clause: **Sperava ch'è verrebbe ma non lò**

È stanco? Are you tired? **Lò sono,** I am. **Ne abbiamo dei libri.**¹ We have some books. **La távola l'ho vista.** I have seen the table.

(2) The pronominal particles are often used with the articles in place of possessives (cf. 137 (2)):

Mi duole la tēsta. My head aches.

Lē gettai lē bráccia al cōllo. I threw my arms around her neck.

Si ruppe una gamba. He has broken his leg.

Mi è mōrto un amico. A friend of mine has died, I have lost a friend.

(3) Two particles, one of which is really a dative, are often used together where in English a preposition would be necessary:

Gliēlo² cercherò. I will look for it for you.

(4) **Ci, vi, and ne** as pronouns are to be distinguished from **ci, vi, ne** as adverbs³ by the context:

Ci vede. He sees us. **Ci va.** He is going there.

N'ha. He has some. **Ne viēne.** He is coming from there.

(5) A verb may be accompanied by two conjunctive pronouns only when one is a direct, the other an indirect, as in **sapeva**, "I hoped you would come, but did not know it" (i.e., that you would come). **La, lē,** and **una** are also neuter in idiomatic phrases where they represent an indefinite object not expressed: **Darla a gamba**, "to run away"; **Ha fatto una delle sue**, "he has committed one of his ordinary blunders", "that is like him"; **Non cē ne perdonava una**, "he treated us all alike". The apparently feminine form is explained by comparison with the Latin neuter plural.

¹ The repetition here gives emphasis. The Italian phrase may mean much more than the English—"we have indeed some books, yes indeed, we have some". In the second example **lò** is really an adverb.

² Cf. 101.

³ Etymologically the words are identical.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



(b) The conjunctive pronouns except **gli** (and **glie** = **gli** or **le**, for which see 101) double their initial consonant when the verbal form to which they are added is a monosyllable or a polysyllable ending in an accented vowel,¹ as **cominciògli**, “he began it”; **dimmi** (**di**’ from **dire**, “to say”, “to tell”), “tell (thou) me”²:

Mostragli il giornale. Show (to) him the newspaper.
Eccolo. Here it is.

E mostratolo vieni quà a parlarmi. And when you have shown it (literally, “and it having been shown”) come here to talk to me.

Mostrandolo sei stato obbediente. In showing it you were obedient.

Dammi la mano, vòglio condurti³ a spasso. Give me your hand, I will take you to walk.

Parliamo loro. Let us talk to them.

REMARK. A conjunctive pronoun depending upon a dependent transitive infinitive may either be united to the infinitive or may precede the principal verb:

Desidero sentirlo or lo desidero sentire. I desire to hear him. (Since an intransitive verb cannot take a direct object, it follows that where the dependent infinitive is intransitive the object always belongs to the principal verb. Therefore phrases like “I see him coming” must be translated **lo vedo venire**, or **lo vedo venendo**, or **lo vedo che viene**, but never **vedo venirlo**.) But there is not always this freedom of choice; the following cases must be distinguished:

(a) When the principal verb is impersonal the pronoun must always go with the infinitive:

¹ This doubling in composition is not confined to this compound. **Da + ci = dacci**, etc.

² In these as in all the above compounds the verbal form is accented as usual, the pronoun unaccented.

³ = **condurre te**.

Bisogna sentirlo. One must hear him (*not lo bisogna sentire*).

(*b*) Where *in Italian* a preposition must stand between the principal verb and its dependent infinitive, the pronoun must go with the infinitive:

Andrò a farlo. I shall go to do it (*not loandrò a fare*).

(*c*) Where the principal verb has already a pronominal object of its own it takes also that of the dependent infinitive, which it governs directly¹:

Me l' ha visto fare. He has seen me do it.

(*d*) In case the principal verb is **fare** and the dependent infinitive has a pronominal direct object, the object of **fare** is made indirect and placed before it, and the infinitive keeps its object attached to it:

Gli fa leggerlo. He makes him read it.²

(*e*) **Lasciare, sentire, udire,** and **vedere** may also take this construction, and **lasciare** usually does:

Gli lascerò vederlo. I shall let him see him.

100. Where two conjunctive pronouns accompany one verb³ the indirect object precedes the direct:

Mi vi mostrava. He was showing you to me. **Mostratomi.** Having pointed you out to me.

EXCEPTION: Infringements of this rule are not uncommon. **Loro** regularly comes last:

Vi mostrava loro. He showed you to them.

Mostratovi loro. Having pointed you out to them.

Me gli accostai. I drew near him.

101. **Mi, ti, si, ci, vi,** when they are followed by **lo, la, li, le, ne,** change their **i** to **e**. **Gli** and **le,** "to him"

¹ I.e., without a preposition between it and the infinitive. Cf. (*b*) above.

² This is an extension of the principle that a transitive verb can have only one direct object, **leggere** being in the example the direct object of **fa**. This construction is found also in French.

³ Cf. 98 (5).

and “to her” (“to you”), before the same forms become *glie*, and are written as one word with the other particle:

Tę lọ mọstro; cę lọ mọstrava; vę nę parlo; glięne parlerò¹; ęgli mę li aveva mostrati.

Exercises XVIII and XIX.

Reflexive Verbs.

102. Any transitive verb may be made reflexive by giving it throughout the appropriate conjunctive pronouns, i.e., those of the same person as the subject. Following is a synopsis of a reflexive verb:

Infinitive.	vestirsi , to dress one's self
Present participle.	vestendosi
Past participle.	vestitosi

INDICATIVE.

Present.	(io) mi vęsto , I dress myself
	(tu) ti vęsti , thou dressest thyself
	(ęgli) si vęste , he dresses himself
	(noi) ci vestiamo , we dress ourselves
	(voi) vi vestite , you dress yourselves
	(ęssi) si vęstono , they dress themselves
Imperfect.	mi vestiva , etc.
Preterit.	mi vestii , etc.
Future.	mi vestirò , etc.
Conditional.	mi vestirei , etc.

IMPERATIVE.

vęstiti
vestitevi

¹ The context will in such cases show whether the meaning is “I shall speak to him about it” or “I shall speak to her about it”.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.	mi vęsta, etc.
Imperfect.	mi vestissi, etc.

Compound Tenses.¹

INDICATIVE.

Past indefinite.	mi sono vestito, etc.
Pluperfect.	mi ² ęra vestito, etc.
Past anterior.	mi fui vestito, etc.
Future anterior.	mi sarò vestito, etc.
Conditional.	mi sarei vestito, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Past indefinite.	mi sia vestito, etc.
Pluperfect.	mi fossi vestito, etc.

Remarks on Reflexive Verbs.

103. As has been already observed (77), all reflexive verbs form their compound tenses from *ęssere* + the past participle. The past participle agrees oftenest with the direct object (which is of course of the same number and gender as the subject)³:

La signora mi disse che s' ęra alzata alle sette. The lady told me that she had gotten up at seven o'clock.

Essęndosene vergognata molto la povera piccina. The poor little girl having been much ashamed of it.

REMARK. There is no distinction of form between reflexive and reciprocal verbs, but *l' un l' altro*, "one another", may be added in order to avoid ambiguity:

Le donne s' amano le une le altre. The women love one another.

¹ Cf. 78 and 103.² Or *m' ęra vestito*.³ Cf. also 114.

104. The third person of the reflexive is often used with (a) a passive sense; (b) an impersonal (neutral) sense.

(a) In the first case the verb is naturally always a transitive one (since only a transitive may become passive), and the verb agrees with its subject, *si* being its direct object:

Questi libri si còmprano dappertutto. These books are sold everywhere (literally, “sell themselves”).

Il libro che mi si diède. The book which was given to me.

(b) In the second case the verb may be and often is intransitive. It has no subject expressed, and the *si* which accompanies it, although it is not its subject, may conveniently be translated “one”, “they”, “people”, “we”:

Si dice. It is said, they say.

Se ne parla. People are talking about it.

Si ballerà. There will be dancing.

Se ne va. People are leaving.

Io sperava che oggi si sarebbe stati allegrì insieme.
I hoped that we would have been happy together to-day.

105. The fact that there are these two constructions with the reflexive and that they are not clearly understood by all has given rise to a certain amount of confusion. Where the subject follows and the *si* precedes the verb the latter is often made singular as though *si* were its subject:

Queste cose non si pòssono fare. These things cannot be done.

Or:

Non si può fare queste cose.

(a) Or a verb in the singular may be followed by a plural noun or adjective:

Quando si è costretti. When one is constrained.

Si diède nuove pòco consolanti.¹ There was bad news.

(b) **Si** may serve with a passive to mark a change of tense:

È creduto. It is believed. **Si è creduto** (= **è stato creduto**). It has been believed.²

106. Many verbs are reflexive in Italian which are not so in English, and there are many essentially reflexive verbs, i.e., verbs which are never used except as reflexives, as **pentirsi**, "to repent", **accorgersi**, "to perceive", etc. Many reflexive verbs require a preposition to complete their meaning, as:

abituarsi a, to get accustomed to.

rallegrarsi di, to rejoice over, etc.³

107. The verb **andarsene**, "to go away", deserves special mention, as it takes two conjunctive pronouns throughout:

mè nè vado, I am going away.

sè nè andava, he was going away.

sè nè andranno, they will go away.

vátene, go (thou) away; **andatevene**, go (ye, you) away.

non' sè nè vádano, let them not go away.

esséndosene andati, they having gone away, etc.

(*Exercises XX and XXI.*)

¹ Literally, "news little consoling".

² For this curious usage cf. Moise, *Regole ed Osservazioni della Lingua Italiana*, § 332, p. 298.

³ Cf. lists under 211 (3) and 212 (2).

CHAPTER VIII.

ADJECTIVES AND PARTICIPLES.

108. Adjectives and participles used as adjectives agree with their nouns in number and gender. Generally speaking, this agreement is indicated by the termination.¹

(a) An adjective or participle qualifying two or more nouns of different number and gender is usually made masculine plural, but it may agree only with the noun nearest to it:

Signore, signori, donne del popolo, operai, ufficiali, nonne, serve, tutti coi ragazzi per una mano e i libretti di promozione nell' altra, empivan la stanza d' entrata e le scale. Ladies, gentlemen, women of the lower classes, workmen, officials, grandmothers, servants, all holding boys by one hand and the certificates of promotion in the other, filled the entrance and the stairways.

Il padre, i fratelli e le sorelle sono partite. The father, brothers, and sisters have gone.

(b) A plural noun may take two or more adjectives in the singular in cases where in point of fact each adjective should be accompanied by a noun in the singular:

Le lingue francese e tedesca sono lingue moderne. The French and German languages are modern languages.

109. All adjectives (with the exception of those few mentioned under **118**) end in the masculine singular in either **o** or **e**. Those in **o** have a corresponding form in **a**, and both masculine and feminine form their plural

¹ Cf. 42.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership
provides unlimited
access to more than
28,000 volumes of
Christian literature for
\$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

Remarks on the Participles.

111. The present participle in **-ante, -ente**, where it has not become a noun is always an adjective and so takes the forms of an adjective:

È una ragazza amante. She is an affectionate girl.

Le ragazze sono amanti.

I deridenti ogni credenza lo dicono. Those who scoff at all belief say so.

(a) There is a large class of words made up of these participles substantivized; as, **amante, cantante, comandante, rappresentante**, etc. **Deridenti** in the last example above is almost a substantive.

112. The present participle in **-ando, -endo** is never used as an adjective, but always with verbal force, and is therefore invariable:

Essendo ammalati non possono andare a trovarlo. Being ill (=since they are ill) they cannot go to see him.

Dicendo così essa mi lasciò. Thus saying she left me.

113. The past participle may be either an adjective or a verb:

(a) Used with **essere** (**venire, rimanere**—cf. 81) it is a predicate adjective and as such agrees with its noun, i.e., with the subject of **essere**:

Il libro viene mostrato. The book is (being) shown.

I libri sono stati mostrati.

(b) Used with **avere** the past participle is a verb.¹

¹ The difference of function of the participle when used with these two verbs may be made clear by turning the phrase under consideration into a question. Thus, taking the examples given at the end of the paragraph: I have shown the books. *What have I done?* I have *shown* (which is an *action*). Here are the books which I have shown. *What books are these?* They *are* the books which I have shown. (No action here, “shown” qualifying

As such it may remain invariable (i.e., in the masculine singular).

But it is evident that the action is *done to* the direct object of *avére*, so the past participle may agree with that direct object.

It usually agrees with a personal pronoun preceding the verb, and often with an object other than a personal pronoun when it precedes the verb:

Họ mostrato i libri.¹

Ecco i libri che ho mostrato (*or mostrati*).

Ecco i libri, li họ mostrati.²

114. The case of reflexive and reciprocal verbs is somewhat different from either of those mentioned above.³ The verb is here *éssere*, which has, however, an active sense. The past participle is therefore a verb, not a predicate adjective, and as such it may agree with a direct object preceding it. As noted above, it usually does agree when this object is a personal pronoun:

Ci siamo amati. We have loved one another (*or ourselves*).

Lę donne si sono amate. The women have loved one another (*or themselves*).

But the reflexive pronoun is frequently not the direct object:

“books”, just as any other adjective might.) Taking the two questions: “He is—what?” “He has done—what?” it is clear that the answer to the first is a noun or adjective, that to the second a verb.

¹ **Họ mostrati i libri** is very unusual.

² **Li họ mostrato** would be very unusual. It is, however, evident that the tendency is in Italian to make the past participle with *avére* invariable.

³ Cf. 103.

Ci siamo parlati. We have spoken to one another.

In this case, where there is no direct object expressed, the participle usually agrees with the subject (or the indirect object, it would be difficult to say which, since with these verbs the same person performs and receives the action). But where there is a direct object expressed the participle may agree either with that or with the subject, or may remain invariable:

Ci siamo detti (detta, detto) la verità. We have told one another the truth.¹

(a) The qualifiers of two or more nouns either singular or plural, not of the same gender, are made masculine plural:

L' uomo e le donne sono venuti. The man and the women have come.

Il fratello e la sorella sono belli tutt' e due. Both the brother and the sister are handsome.

Forms of Adjectives.

115. **Bello, grande,** and **santo** drop their final syllable, **buono** its final vowel before a singular masculine noun beginning with a consonant:

Un bel libro. Un gran ragazzo. Un buon cane.

San Carlo. Saint Charles.

(a) Before a singular masculine beginning with a vowel **bello** becomes **bell'**; **grande, grand'**; **santo, sant'**; **buono, buon'**:

¹ Literally, "We have said to one another the truth". It is probable that we have here a case of mental confusion, the speaker not knowing what the participle qualifies. But the latitude of the Italians in this matter lightens it for the foreigner.

² Note that there is no apostrophe. Cf. 41, note 2. Compare throughout the forms of the definite article.

Un bell' uomo, un grand' uomo, un sant' uomo, un buon amico.

(b) Before impure s or when predicated the regular forms are used:

Un bello spécchio. L' uomo è grande.

(c) The plural forms are:

(1) For bell, gran, san, buon: bei, grandi, santi, buoni.

(2) For bell', grand', sant', buon: begli, santi, grandi, buoni.

(3) For bello, grande, santo, buono: belli, santi, grandi, buoni.

REMARKS. (1) These latter are the regular forms. It will be observed that bello is much more irregular than the others, being the only one irregular also in the plural.

(2) Gran for grande also occurs in the feminine singular, especially as qualifier of a noun ending in e¹, and sometimes takes the place of grandi in the masculine plural:

Una gran nazione. La gran Bretagna.

La gran via. The highroad. I gran casi. Great events.

Tutti oltre alla grande patria, alla gran madre che ci raccoglie sotto le sue ali, abbiamo una piccola patria: la città od il villaggio che ci ha visti nascere. We all have besides the great native land, the great mother who gathers us under her wings, a little country—the city or village which witnessed our birth.

116. Adjectives in -co and -go form their plurals according to rules closely resembling those given for nouns having these terminations (cf. 62).

(1) Adjectives in -go may always, and do usually, form their plural in -ghi:

¹ Also in the expressions una gran bella cosa, una gran brutta cosa, "a very good thing", "bad thing".

I casi análogos (or análogos). Analogous cases.

Uno stivale largo. A wide boot. **Stivali larghi.**

(2) All feminines, as well in **-ca** as in **-ga**, likewise preserve the quality of the guttural:

Cucina casalinga. Home cooking, middle-class cookery, homelike food. **Abitúđini casalinghe.** Domestic habits.

Una larga cámara A wide room. **Cámere larghe.**

(3) Adjectives in **-co** having the accent on the penult take in the plural **-chi**; those stressed on the antepenult **-ci**¹:

Il vento è fresco. The wind is fresh. **Venti freschi.**

L' uomo è caduco. The man is feeble. **Ecco due uomini caduchi.**

È un gusto animalesco. It is an animal taste, the taste of an animal. **Gusti animaleschi.**

Sente un qualche suono armónico? Do you hear some kind of a harmonious sound? **Sì, sento dei suoni armónici.**

È l' opinione d' un uomo láico. That is the opinion of a layman.

Siamo tutti láici qui.

Un autore clásico. **Degli autori clásici.**

Un poema lírico. **Dei poemi lírici.**

117. Adjectives in **-io** also follow the rules given for nouns of the same termination:

Il cavallo è restío. This horse is restive. **Cavalli restíi.**

Un fiore flóscio. A faded flower. **Dei fiori flósci.**

Un pezzo di legno márcio. A bit of rotten wood.

Acque marce. Putrid waters.

Il ragazzo non è sázio. The boy is not satisfied. **Le ragazze sono sázie.**

¹ Cf. 61 and foot-note. In accordance with this rule all adjectives in **-esco** take **-eschi**, those in **'-ico** take **'-ici**. So **eccéntrico i**, **flantrópico -ci**, **magnífico -ci**, **periódico -ci**, **prático -ci**, **problemático -ci**, but **antíco**, **antichi**. **Púđico** is an exception, forming **púđichi**.

118. Quite irregular adjectives are:

(a) **Pari**, “equal”; **ímpari**, “unequal”; **ogni**, “every”. **Pari** and **ímpari** have only the one form for both genders and numbers. **Ogni** has naturally no plural; it has also no formal distinction of gender. These three are the only adjectives in *i*.

(b) **Qualche**, “some”, has no plural form, and nouns used with it remain singular even though their meaning be plural¹:

Comprerò qualche fiore. I shall buy some flowers.

(c) **Parécchi**, “some”, “several”, has no singular.² Its feminine is **parécchie**.

(d) **Fu** and **già**, “formerly” (the first a part of the verb **éssere**, the second an adverb of time), are invariable:

La Signora Bianco fu (or già) Cesarotti. Mrs. B., whose maiden name was Cesarotti.

(e) **Dabbene**, **dappoco** are adverbial phrases and therefore invariable:

Un uomo dabbene. A well-meaning man, a good man.

(Exercises XXII and XXIII.)

Comparison of Adjectives.

119. The quality expressed by an adjective may be affirmed as simply existing or as existing in a certain degree. The simple affirmation, i.e., the simple form of the adjective, implies no comparison, although it has often been called the positive degree (as compared

¹ The implication with **qualche** is “a few”, whereas **dei fiori** might mean a great many.

² It is in fact the plural of **parécchio**, “like”, with change of meaning. There is also an adverb **parécchio**.

with the comparative and superlative degrees). There are five possible degrees of comparison, expressive of:

- (1) Comparative equality (in comparing two things).
- (2) “ superiority (in comparing two things).
- (3) inferiority (in comparing two things).
- (4) superlativeness (in comparing more than two things).

(5) Absolute superlativeness (in which the quality is affirmed as existing in a superlative degree, and yet without comparison).

This may be made clear by the following English examples:

- (1) This rose is as beautiful as that.
- (2) This rose is more beautiful than that.
- (3) This rose is less beautiful than that.
- (4) This is the most beautiful rose of all.
- (5) This is indeed a most beautiful rose.¹

120. All these degrees may be and usually are expressed in Italian analytically, i.e., by the use of adverbs, the form of the adjective itself remaining unchanged (cf. 122, 125).

Comparison of Equality.

121. The comparison of equality is expressed by **così—come**, **tanto—come**, **tanto—che**, **tanto—quanto**,² **come** or **quanto** alone:

È così grande come suo fratello. He is as large as his brother.

¹ In “This rose is beautiful” we have the so-called “positive degree”.

² **Così-quanto** is rather antiquated, also **sì-quanto** (**sì** being simply the abbreviation of **così**). **Altrettanto** = **tanto**.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



grande, large, great, **maggiore**, **il maggiore** *or* **mássimo**; **píccolo**, little, **minore**, **il minore** *or* **mínimo**.

(a) All these adjectives may also be compared regularly: **alto**, **più alto**, **il più alto**, etc. (cf. 122). The forms have become differentiated by usage, **superiore**, **inferiore**, being usually employed to signify "superior", "inferior"; **più alto**, **più basso**, to mean "higher", "lower", in the material sense. **Migliore** and **peggiore** do not differ in meaning from **più buono** and **più cattivo**, but are oftener used than these latter forms. **Óttimo** and **péssimo** have become so dissociated from the group that they may be regarded as independent adjectives meaning "very good", "very bad", being thus absolute, not comparative, superlatives.¹ The same may be said of **mássimo** and **mínimo**, "very large", "very small", **sommo**, "very high, great", and **infimo**, "very low, base".

Maggiore and **minore** have usually the sense of "older", "younger"; **più grande**, **più píccolo** meaning "larger", "smaller".²

124. The adjectives in **-érrimo** and **-íssimo** must also be regarded as remnants of the Latin system. They are absolutely superlative in meaning.³ Those in **-érrimo** are rare, those in **-íssimo** very common, any adjective being made an absolute superlative by cutting off its final vowel and adding this ending. The

¹ That is, the quality described is in full measure without thought of comparing that measure with any other.

² **Esterno**, **esteriore**, **estremo**; **interno**, **interiore**, **íntimo**; **ulteriore**, **último**, can scarcely be regarded as still building groups of comparison.

³ As is natural, adverbs are also frequently used to form the absolute superlative: **È molto bello**, **assai bello**, **oltremodo bello**, etc.

c or g preceding this final vowel does not change its quality:

È un poeta celeberrimo. He is a very celebrated poet.

Scrive dei versi dolcissimi. He writes very sweet verses.

Pochissimi poeti scrivono così bene. Very few poets write so well.

(a) Adjectives ending in **-dico** and **-fico** (**fice**) have an **-issimo** superlative which might seem irregular: **maledico**, **maledicentissimo**, **benefico**, **beneficentissimo**.

These forms are really derived from **maledicente** (present participle), **beneficente**.

Adjectives in **-évole** have similar forms: **malévole**, **malevolentissimo**.

125. The comparison of inferiority is formed in the same manner as that of superiority, using **meno**, "less", instead of **più**:

È la meno bella delle sorelle. She is the least beautiful of the sisters.

Esse sono men forti che gli uomini. They are less strong than men.

Manco¹ infelice di me. Less unhappy than I.

Comparison by means of **di** and **che**.

126.² "Than" in comparisons whether of superiority or of inferiority is rendered by **di** or **che**.

(a) **Di** is used in comparisons of:

(1) Nouns accompanied by articles (or demonstrative pronouns).

(2) Nouns or pronouns by means of their adjectives.

¹ **Manco** is oftenest used in the adverbial expression **manco male**, "not so bad", "not so badly".

² This paragraph, for the sake of completeness, goes beyond the subject of adjectives and includes comparison also of other parts of speech.

(3) Numerals (i.e., between **più** or **meno** and a numeral).

(b) **Chè** is used in comparisons of:

(1) Nouns without articles.

(2) Nouns or pronouns by means of their verbs.

(3) Adjectives.

(4) Verbs. (See also 127.)

(5) Adverbs, and in all cases where “than” means “rather than”¹:

Mi piace questo vino più dell' altro. I like this wine more than the other (*a*, 1).

Mi piace piuttosto questo vino chè l' altro. This wine pleases me rather than the other (*b*, 2).

Il vino è meno chiaro dell' acqua. Wine is less clear than water (*a*, 2).

Il vino è più buono chè bello² (*b*, 2, or *b*, 5).

Méglia dormire chè tormentarsi. It is better to sleep than to worry (*b*, 4).

Non posso dormire più di sette ore. I cannot sleep more than seven hours (*a*, 3).

Tu sei più giovane di me. You are younger than I (*a*, 2).

Lavora più in fretta chè bene. He works rather fast than well (*b*, 5).

È méglia tardi chè mai. Better late than never (*b*, 5).

È più fortunato che felice. He is more fortunate than happy (*b*, 3, or *b*, 5—“rather fortunate than happy”).

Egli ne ricavò più danno chè útile. He got more harm than good out of it (*b*, 1, or *b*, 5—“rather harm than good”).

¹ **Chè** may be used to avoid a repetition of **di**, as: **Villari è indagatore sagace non meno de' mali presenti chè delle passate vicende d' Italia.** V. is a wise investigator not less of the present ills than of the past vicissitudes of Italy.

² Or: **piuttosto buono chè bello.**



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership
provides unlimited
access to more than
28,000 volumes of
Christian literature for
\$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

Ne sono tanto felici. They are so happy over it.

Vi sono tanti libri. There are so many books. **Quanti?**
How many?

Troppi. Too many. **È troppo lontano.** It is too far.

(a) Adverbial phrases such as: "I returned them just as I received them" (= "in the state in which they were when I received them") are to be rendered by the adjectives **tale, quale**:

Li ho renduti tali quali li ho ricevuti.

Place of Adjectives.

129. Numerals and pronominal adjectives, most adjectives of size and quantity, adjectives of emotion, also (usually) **bello** and **buono** precede the noun:

Ho tre libri. Questi¹ libri sono grandi. Ecco i miei grandi libri.

Ho ancora molti libri. Mostro i miei bei libri al mio caro amico.

130. Participles used as adjectives, adjectives modified by an adverb or a suffix, adjectives of nationality, shape, color, and of material qualities generally, follow the noun:

È un figlio amato. È una cosa ben conosciuta. It is a well-known thing. **Sono libri italiani. È uno specchio rotondo.**

Ecco un abito nero. L'uomo è cieco. Un bell'uccello.

But:

Un uccello bellino.

131. Euphony often decides as to the placing of the adjective. In general one of fewer syllables than its noun precedes, as is the case with **bello** and **buono** mentioned above (129). Where two or more ad-

¹ = "these".

jectives qualify one noun they usually follow, although sometimes one precedes and the other follows:

È un uomo onesto. He is an honest man.

È un uomo onesto e simpático. He is an honest and congenial man.

Sente il profumo delle rose primaverile? Do you smell the perfume of the Spring roses?

Vedete pure la bell' erba verde! Only see the beautiful green grass!

132. A certain number of adjectives take a different meaning when placed elsewhere than is usual. When out of their usual place, whether that be before or after the noun, they have ordinarily the literal meaning¹:

Un uomo grande. A large man. **Un grand' uomo.** A great man.

Un uomo galante. A gallant man. **Un galantuomo.** An honorable man.

Un caro amico. A dear friend. **Una casa cara.** A costly house.

Una doppia scrittura. A double copy. **La scrittura doppia.** Double-entry book-keeping.

È la sola mia figlia. She is my only daughter. **Mia figlia sola l'ha sentito.** Only my daughter has heard it.

(Exercises XXIV and XXV.)

¹ Cf. 130, also the French usage of the same adjectives.

CHAPTER IX.

POSSESSIVES.

133. Possessives are either adjectives or pronouns according to their use in the sentence. In *ecco il mio libro*, *mio* is an adjective and is treated as such. But in *ecco il mio*, *mio* is a pronoun representing an antecedent (this being in the above case *libro*). In Italian, however, the form of the possessive is the same, whether its function be adjective or pronominal. In other words, “my” and “mine” are rendered in Italian by one and the same word¹:

È il suo fazzoletto, nevrero? This is your handkerchief, isn't it?

Ma no, non è il mio. No, it is not mine.

134. The article being used with most nouns (cf. 44), it follows that it in most cases immediately precedes the possessive qualifying the noun. The pronominal possessive, representing a noun, is treated as a noun, that is, it also usually takes the article. Thus the possessive is seldom found without an article, and that article being generally the definite, the latter is given with the forms of the possessive, which are:

Singular.		Plural.		
masc. (il) mio		(i) miei	}	my, mine.
fem. (la) mia		(le) mie		
masc. (il) tuo		(i) tuoi	}	thy, thine (your, yours).
fem. (la) tua		(le) tue		
masc. (il) suo		(i) suoi	}	his, her, hers (your, yours).
fem. (la) sua		(le) sue		

¹ Cf. French *mon* and *le mien*, which more resemble the English.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



Queste sono mie figlie. These are my daughters (= daughters of mine, some of my daughters).

But:

Queste sono le mie figlie. These are my daughters (= all of my daughters).

Quel libro è mio. That book is *mine* (=it is one of *my* books, not of yours).

Quelli sono i miei libri. Those are my *books* (=all the books now in question).

È Sua questa casa? Do you own this house?

È la Sua casa? Is this your home? ¹

(2) In a number of set phrases, such as:

Con vostra licenza. By your leave.

Non è colpa mia. It is not my fault.

Per causa vostra. On your account.

Da parte mia. For my part.

Vado in tua vece. I go in your stead.

137. The use of the possessive is much more restricted in Italian than in English, it being replaced by (1) the definite article; (2) the definite article and a conjunctive pronoun.

(1) Where the subject of the sentence is the possessor, or where for other reasons there could be no ambiguity, the definite article is used instead of the possessive ²:

Prendo il quaderno nella mano.³ I take the copy-book in *my* hand.

Portami il soprabito. Bring me *my* overcoat.

Dammi la mano. Give me *your* hand.

¹ However, *casa mia* is often used for "at home" without the article.

² Cf. 44 (8).

³ Sometimes even the article is omitted: **Prendo il quaderno in mano.**

Ho freddo ai piedi or Ho i piedi freddi. . . . *My feet are cold.*¹

Il bambino cerca la mamma. The child is looking for *his* mother.

(2) With reflexive verbs, or with verbs not reflexive but accompanied by a conjunctive personal pronoun indicating the person *to whom*, the possessive is replaced by an article²:

Si lavi la faccia. Let him wash his face, he must wash his face (literally, "let him wash to himself the face").

Mi sono rotto una gamba. I have broken *my* leg (one of my legs).

Lę hanno tagliato i capelli. They have cut off *her* hair.

138. The possessive agrees in person with the possessor, in gender and number with the noun denoting the object possessed. It follows that **suo padre** means as well "her father" as "his father", **sua madre**, "his mother" or "her mother". The meaning is in most cases made clear by the context, but where the sense might be ambiguous **di lui**, **di lei** are used instead of the possessive of the third person singular:

Egli non ha mai conosciuto la di lui madre; ama molto la di lei. He never knew his mother; he loves hers dearly.

(*Exercises XXVI and XXVII.*)

¹ Cf. 84.

² Cf. 98 (2).

CHAPTER X.

DEMONSTRATIVES, RELATIVES, INTERROGATIVES,
INDEFINITES.

139. Demonstratives, like possessives, may be either adjectives or pronouns. They have forms which may be used as either and forms which are always used pronominally and only to represent persons.

1. Adjective or Pronominal Forms.

	Singular.	Plural.	
masc.	questo	questi	} this, these.
fem.	questa	queste	
masc.	cotesto ¹	cotesti	} that, those.
fem.	cotesta	coteste	
masc.	quello	quelli, quegli, quei ²	
fem.	quella	quelle	

2. Pronominal Forms (used only of Persons).

questi, this man.	costoro, these men, these
costui, this man, <i>often in a contemptuous sense</i> , this fellow.	quelli, } that man. [women. ³
	colui, }
costei, this woman.	colei, that woman. [women.
	coloro, those men, those

140. To these must be added *ciò*, "this", "that",

¹ Or *codesto*, *codesti*, etc.

² Sometimes shortened into *que'*.

³ Notice that the forms meaning "this" all have some trace of the Latin *iste*, those meaning "that", with the single exception of *cotesto*, some trace of *ille*. For the contemptuous sense of *costui* cf. that of *iste*. *Costei*, *costoro*, *colui*, *colei*, *coloro*, sometimes, but not frequently, have this contemptuous sense.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books' Full Membership provides unlimited access to more than 28,000 volumes of Christian literature for \$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

Hò parlato con Alessandro, e hò capito che questi (or questo Alessandro, but not questo alone) ti vuol bene. I have spoken with Alexander and I understood that he (=this one, this Alexander of whom we are speaking) is well inclined towards you.

Hai parlato con quegli altri? Have you spoken with those others?

Quelli (or coloro) che hò visto non hanno voluto parlare. Those whom I saw did not want to talk.

Relatives.

145. The relatives are:

che, who, whom, that, which.

il quale, i quali, la quale, le quali, who, whom, that which.

cui, whom, to whom, whose.

chi, the one who, any one who, whoever.

onde, of whom, of which, with whom, with which, by whom, by which, etc.

(a) These forms are all pronouns, although **il quale** is sometimes used with a noun:

Il quale padre Cristóforo. This Father Christopher.

(b) The first three are much more frequent than the others.

Remarks on the Relatives.

146. **Che** is invariable. It is generally used only as subject or direct object. **Il quale**, which is inflected throughout by combination with the various forms of the article, is used for all cases. As a subject or direct object **che**¹ is preferred to it excepting where ambiguity might result from its invariableness of form:

¹ **Che** is a noun in the expressions: **un bel che, un gran che.**

L' uomo che parla è mio padre. The man who is speaking is my father.

Il giovane che vede là è il mio amico. The young man whom you see there is my friend.

L' uomo del quale parliamo è il suo nemico. The man of whom we are speaking is your enemy.

Ecco l' uomo colla donna la quale abbiamo vista ieri. There is the man with the woman whom we saw yesterday. (**Ecco l' uomo colla donna che abbiamo visto** would be ambiguous, since **che** might refer either to the man, the woman or both.)

Sono i figli della signora la quale abbiamo incontrata. They are the children of the lady whom we met.

(a) **Che**, meaning "which" and referring to a whole clause, is a sort of neuter. It usually takes the definite article¹:

Lei non dice niente, il che vuol dire che non n' è contento You say nothing, which indicates that you are not pleased about it.

147. Cui is invariable. It is used as an indirect object, generally but not always with a preposition.² It is interchangeable in many cases with **del quale**, **della quale**, **dei quali**, **al quale**, etc.:

La signora cui (a cui, alla quale) parla è mia zia. The lady to whom he is talking is my aunt.

Ecco la persona cui (di cui, della quale) Le ho parlato. Here is the person of whom I spoke to you.

Questa è la ragione per cui presto partir risolvo. This is the reason on account of which I am resolved to go away at once.

¹ It is found in older Italian without it.

² **Cui** is sometimes found instead of **il quale** as direct object, but this usage is rare and is really contrary to the nature of **cui**. Cf. note 1, p. 106.

(a) When **cui**, meaning “whose”, is used without the preposition **di**, it should be placed between the noun qualified and the article belonging to that noun:

L' autore le cui opere abbiamo letto, or L' autore di cui abbiamo letto le opere.

In this example the difference in the use of **cui** and **il quale** is clear. One could substitute for the latter phrase: **L' autore del quale abbiamo letto le opere**, but one could not say: **L' autore i quali opere abbiamo letto**. **Cui** comprehends in itself a notion of some prepositional relationship,¹ which **il quale** does not, therefore the preposition which may be omitted with the former must be expressed with the latter.

148. Chi is invariable. It is less frequent, but where used often more elegant, than **colui che, colui che, coloro che**, which have the same meaning:

Chi ama, teme (or colui che ama, teme). He who loves, fears.

Chi cerca troverà. He who seeks shall find.

Consigliatevi con chi ha esperienza. Take counsel with those who have had experience.

Troverai chi t' aiuterà. You will find somebody who will help you.

(a) **Chi . . . chi** is to be rendered by “some . . . some”, “some . . . others”, “the one . . . the other”, or the like:

Chi va, chi viene. Some are going, some coming.

Chi ride, chi piange. One laughs, the other weeps.

149. Onde is invariable. It always has a sense of prepositional relationship:

L' anima gloriosa onde si parla (or della quale si parla).
The glorious soul of which we are speaking.

¹ It is the Latin dative, which expresses the notion of possession, the notion of the preposition “of” as well as that of the preposition “to”. Cf. French: **À qui est ce chapeau?**



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



Chi è? Who is it? **Chi sono queste donne?** Who are these women?

Di chi parlate? Of whom are you speaking?

Di chi sono questi fiori? Whose flowers are these?

154. Che is sometimes a pronoun, sometimes an adjective. It is always invariable. As a pronoun it is used only of things, as an adjective it may also be used of persons:

Che cerca? What are you looking for?

Che persona ha visto? (less common than **Chi ha visto?**)

What person have you seen?

(a) **Che cosa** is frequently used for "what":

Che cosa ha visto?

155. Quale is either a pronoun or an adjective. It is in either case inflected like any adjective ending in **e**. It is used both of persons and things:

Quale dei due ragazzi è là? Which of the two boys is there?

È un uomo che aspetta. It is a man who is waiting.

Qual uomo? What man?

Quali ragioni ha per crederlo? What reasons have you for thinking so?

156. Quanto is either a pronoun, an adjective, or an adverb.¹ Except in the latter case it is inflected like any adjective ending in **o**:

Quanto vuole? How much do you want?

Quante sedie sonvi? How many seats are there?

(a) **Tutto quanto** (-i, -a, -e) means "all":

Li ha visti tutti quanti. He has seen them all.

157. All these interrogatives except **chi** may also be used in exclamations. They are not accompanied by the article as in English:

¹ Cf. 121 and 128.

Che peccato! What a pity!

Qual uomo! What a man!

Quanti dispiaceri! How many troubles!

Indefinites.

158. The following are the principal indefinite pronouns:

alcuno, -i, -a, -e, some, any.

altri, another (**altri . . . altri,**
one . . . another).

altrui, of another, to another,
of others, to others.

altro, something else, any-
thing else.

certuno,¹ a certain person.

ciascuno, ciascheduno, every,
every one.

checchesia (checchessia),

checchè,² whatever, any
whatever.

chiunque, chicchesia, who-
ever, any one whatever.

nessuno, niuno, no one.

niente, nulla, nothing.

ognuno, everybody.

parecchi, several.

più, i più, most, the most.

qualchedcosa, something, any-
thing.

qualcuno, qualcheduno, any
one.

taluno,³ such an one.

tutto, -i, -a, -e, everything,
every one, all.

veruno, nobody.

uno, one.

**l' uno e l' altro, gli uni e gli
altri,⁴** both.

¹ Rare. This, like **ciascuno, nessuno,** etc., is a compound of **uno,** "one".

² Not often used in modern Italian. Observe that this is formed from **che + che,** **checchesia** from **che + che + sia,** **chicchesia** from **chi + che + sia,** etc.

³ Rare.

⁴ Fem. **l'una e l'altra, le une e le altre.** **Ambedue** also means "both", but the commonest expression is **tutti e due.** "All three" = **tutti e tre,** "all four" = **tutti e quattro,** etc.

Remarks on the Indefinite Pronouns.

159. *Altri*¹ is used as either subject or object, *altrui* always denotes some prepositional relationship. Both are used of persons only, *altro* only of things:

Altri è lieto, altri mísero. One is happy, the other (another) miserable.

Io non vóglío (la) roba altrui (or d' altri). I do not want other people's property.

Non ha detto altro? No, niente di piú. Did he not say anything else? No, nothing more.

160. *Checchesia* and *chicchesia* being really phrases are not used as the subject of a verb. Other phrases meaning "whatever" are: *qualsivógliá, qualsíasi, tutto quel chę, quale chę sia, per quanto,*² etc.:

Non lo dirò a chicchesia. I shall not tell it to any one whatever.

Non dirò checchesia. I shall not say anything whatever.

Quali chę síano i suoi talęti, non parla bene. Whatever his talents may be, he does not speak well.

Chiunque tęma torni a casa.

Per quanti talęti ábbia, non lavora. Whatever talents he may have, he does not work.

161. *Nessuno* is commoner in every-day Italian than *niuno* or *veruno*, and *niente* than *nulla*. *Nulla* is more adapted to the elevated style. *Non* is often used with all these negatives:

Vi è nessuno in casa? Is there nobody at home?

Non vi è nessuno. There is nobody.

Chę cosa dice? Niente. What are you saying? Nothing.

¹ A feminine, *altra*, is also found.

² Most phrases of like meaning are followed by the subjunctive. Cf. 232 (4) (a).



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership
provides unlimited
access to more than
28,000 volumes of
Christian literature for
\$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

Arcibello, very beautiful; **arcibriccone**, arch-scoundrel; **soprabbondévole**, superabundant; **sopraeccitábile**, very excitable; **sopraeccitabilità**, overexcitability; **sopraccárico**, overburdened, overloaded; **il sovrappiù**, the excess; **sovrappieno**, overfull; **stragora**, an unusual, unreasonable hour; **stragrande**, very large.

165. Suffixes are very numerous. They may express shades of meaning so various and sometimes so elusive that only wide reading can enable the foreigner fully to understand their use. They constitute, however, one of the great charms of the language.

Suffixes may be classified according to their meaning as *diminutives*, *augmentatives*, as terms expressive of *endearment*, of *disparagement*, or of *deteriority*.¹

166. The principal diminutives are (those oftenest used being placed first): **-ino** (**-cino**,² **-icino**, **-iccino**, **-olino**); **-etto** (**-osetto**) (often with a sense of endearment); **-ello** (**-cello**, **-arello**, **erello**, **-icello**); **-úccio** (often with a pejorative sense); **-uolo** (**-glo**, **-eruolo**, **-ettuolo**, **-iciottálo**, **-ícolo**, **-iccuolo**); **-otto** (used as a noun diminutive only in speaking of the young of animals cf. 167); **-óccio**; **-ógnolo**, **-íccio**; **-igno**; **-astro**, **-úcolo**, **-uzzo**, **-úzzolo** (all four pejorative)³:

Ragazzo, boy; **ragazzino**,⁴ **ragazzuolo**, little boy; **ragazetto**, dear little boy; **ragazzúccio**, naughty little boy.

¹ In Italian: **diminutivi**, **accrescitivi**, **vezzeggiativi**, **peggiorativi** (**dispregiativi**).

² Cf. 171 (b).

³ Added to adjectives of color **-astro** is a diminutive: **giallo**, "yellow"; **giallastro**, "yellowish". Otherwise it is pejorative. **-Íccio**, **-igno**, and **-ógnolo** are all used with adjectives: **giallícchio**, "yellowish"; **asprigno**, "somewhat harsh".

⁴ Words to which a suffix has been added are accented as though that suffix were an integral part of them: **ragazzino**, etc.

Fiume, river; **fumicello**, little river; **fumícolo**, insignificant little stream.

Fíglio, son; **figliuolo** (which has lost its diminutive sense), **figliolino**, little son.

Bráccio, arm; **bracciuolo**, arm of chair.

Via, street; **viuzza**, narrow street, alley.

Cane, dog; **cagnolino**, pretty little dog.

Aquila, eagle; **aquillotto**, eaglet.

Orso, bear; **orsacchiotto**, bear's cub.

Grande, large; **grandino**, somewhat large.

Caro, dear; **carino**, winning, Deary (epithet).

Pálido, pale; **paliduccio**, rather pale.

Grazioso, graceful, pleasing; **graziosetto**, **graziosettino**, pretty, charming.

Grasso, fat; **grassoccio**, plump.

Verde, green; **verdastro**, greenish.

Piano, softly; **veniva pianino**, he came quite softly, quietly.

167. The principal augmentatives are: **-one** (**-cione**, **-accione**, **-oncione**), **-otto**,¹ and for adjectives **-uto**:

Donna, woman; **il donnone**, the big woman.

Ragazzotto, big strong boy.

Naso, nose; **nasuto** (adj. formed from it), long-nosed.

168. The principal suffixes indicative of endearment are **-ino**, **-olino**, **-etto**, already mentioned under diminutives. The context shows whether the meaning is endearing or diminutive.

169. The principal pejoratives are **-accio**, **-astro**, **-azzo**, and those already mentioned under diminutives (**-úcolo**, **-uzzo**, etc.):

Poeta, poet; **poetastro**, poor poet, poetaster.²

¹ Added to the names of animals **-otto** is, as stated in 166, a diminutive.

² Which is in fact the Italian word.

Gióvine, young man; **giovinastro**, dissolute youth.

Stéfano, Stephen; **Stefanáccio**, naughty Stephen.

Amore, love; **amorazzo**, illicit love.

Frate, monk; **fratuzzo**, monk of bad habits.

170. The suffixes have in many cases lost their original meaning:

Conte, count, **contessa**, countess; **il contino e la contessina**, the young (*not* "little") count and countess (for instance, the son and daughter-in-law of the **conte**).

Casa, house; **casino**, country-house, club-house. (**Casetta**, **casúccia**—"little house"—the latter usually "wretched little house".)

(a) In the same way **fratello**, originally a diminutive from **frate** (which latter now means *only* "brother in a religious order", "monk"), means "brother", and a new diminutive formed from it, **fratellino**—"little brother". In **figliastro**, "stepson", there is no sense of disparagement, just as there is none of the diminutive in **matrigna**, "stepmother", or in **matrina**, "god-mother".¹

171. The final vowel is usually dropped before a suffix:

Testa, head; **testolina**, little head.

Pazzo, fool; **pazzerello**. **Contadina**, peasant woman; **contadinetta**, strong peasant woman.

(a) If the consonant preceding this final vowel be a **c** or a **g** it retains its quality:

Poco, little; **pochino**, a little bit.

Fresco, fresh, cool. **Per non scéndere giù in chiesa, a mattutino, quando faceva freschetto, avévano ordinato la**

¹ In all these words the suffixes have simply been incorporated, being used as an element for word-building. In others, as **scodella**, "dish", the diminutive sense of the suffix was probably lost in Latin.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



CHAPTER XII.

IRREGULAR VERBS. IMPERSONAL VERBS.
DEFECTIVE VERBS.

173. We have seen (67 and 68) that regular verbs form their tenses by adding certain *endings*, which vary with the conjugation (67) to a *stem* which is *invariable*.¹ In many irregular verbs the *stem* is *variable*.² The variations of the stem are the result of: (a) contraction; (b) the stressing of the stem-vowel.³

All irregular verbs except *éssere* have *certain parts* which remain regular.

174. Contraction of the infinitive may occur especially where the initial vowel of the infinitive ending is unstressed, that is to say, in '-ere verbs:

Dire, to say (contracted from **dícere**).

One cannot call the form **dire** itself irregular, yet the fact that parts of the verb are quite regularly formed from the uncontracted infinitive **dícere**⁴ give the whole system an appearance of irregularity:

Dic-eva. He was saying.⁵

175. The future and conditional being formed from the infinitive,⁶ exhibit, where the latter is contracted, the same contracted form:

¹ In other words, regular verbs are weak. Irregular verbs are for the most part strong.

² Some grammarians prefer to say that the verb has several stems.

³ The secret of all variations is really change of stress.

⁴ Which does not exist in modern Italian.

⁵ Which is in fact a perfectly regular form.

⁶ These tenses are composed of the infinitive followed by the pres-

Dirò. I shall say. **Dirèbbe.** He would say.

But they may be contracted when the infinitive is not and cannot be:

Tenere, to hold. **Terrò.** I shall hold.¹

176. Those parts of the verb in which the accent falls on the stem, i.e., the *present*, indicative and subjunctive (except the second person plural), the *singular imperative*, and the *preterite* (except the second person singular and the first and second persons plural) are the parts oftenest irregular. The past participle is also frequently irregular:

Trarre, to draw (contracted from *tràere*);

Traggo, I draw; **Trassi**, I drew.

But: **Traeva**, I was drawing, etc., regular.

177. As we have seen (173), Italian irregular verbs are, with the single exception of *èssere*, regular in certain parts. In the model irregular verbs given below those which *are regular in all irregular verbs* (except those mentioned under 180) are marked with an asterisk.

(a) **Trarre** (contracted from *tràere*), to draw, drag.

Present Participle.

***traendo**

Past Participle.

tratto

INDICATIVE.

Present.

Future.

traggo	traiamo	trarrò³	trarremo
trai (traggi)²	* traete	trarrai	trarrete
trae (tragge)	trággono	trarrà	trarranno

ent or the preterite of *avère* — *mostrare* + *hò* > *mostrerò* (literally, “I have to show”), *servire* + *èbbe* > *servirèbbe* (“he had to serve”).

¹ This is because the accent, which in the infinitive falls on the antepenult, preventing contraction (*tenere*), is in the compound thrown on the penult — *tenere* + *hò* > *tenerò* > *terrò*. *Tenerò* does not exist in modern Italian.

² The forms bracketed are less frequent.

³ Regularly formed from the infinitive *trarre*.

INDICATIVE.

Imperfect.		Conditional.	
*traeva ¹	*traevamo	trarrei ²	trarremmo
*traevi	*traevate	trarresti	trarreste
*traeva	*traevano	trarrebbe	trarrebbero

Preterite.		Imperative.	
trassi	*traemmo		
*traesti	*traeste	trai	traete
trasse	trassero		

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.		Imperfect.	
tragga	tragghiamo	*traessi	*traessimo
tragga	tragghiate	*traessi	*traeste
tragga	traggano	*traesse	*traessero

(b) Venire, to come.

Present Participle.

***venendo**

Past Participle.

venuto

INDICATIVE.

Present.		Future.	
vengo	veniamo	verrò	verremo
vieni	*venite	verrai	verrete
viene	vengono	verrà	verranno

Imperfect.		Conditional.	
*veniva	*venivamo	verrei	verremmo
*veniva	*venivate	verresti	verreste
*veniva	*venivano	verrebbe	verrebbero

Preterite.		Imperative.	
venni	*venimmo		
*venisti	*veniste	vieni	venite
venne	vennero		

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.		Imperfect.	
venga (vegna)	veniamo ³	*venissi	*venissimo
venga (vegna)	veniate	*venissi	*veniste
venga (vegna)	vengano (vegnano)	*venisse	*venissero

¹ These parts are regularly formed from the infinitive träre.² These parts are regularly formed from the infinitive trarre.³ Sometimes venghiamo.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books' Full Membership provides unlimited access to more than 28,000 volumes of Christian literature for \$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

sapete, you know: **sappiate**, you may know.

sappiate, know (ye).¹

(c) It will be observed that in the model verbs as in many others, the first person singular and the third person plural of the present differ slightly in their irregularity from the other persons of that tense, and that the present subjunctive follows these two forms:

Traggo, trággono, tragga; vengo, véngono, venga, etc.

(d) It will also be observed that all the irregular forms except the future and conditional (which are simply contracted forms) are strong, i.e., stressed on the stem. Cf. 176.

Constructing Irregular Verbs.

179. By observing for certain verbs the remarks under 180, any irregular verb (except **éssere**) may be constructed after these models, the infinitive, the participles, the present indicative, and the first person singular of the preterite and future² being known.

The first person singular of the present indicative gives the third person plural,³ and the present subjunctive, except, in some verbs, the first and second persons plural. The second person singular of the present indicative gives the singular imperative. (Cf. also 180 (3).) The first person singular of the preterite gives the third persons singular and plural.

¹ Cf. 180 (3).

² This latter is necessary only with verbs which contract the future but leave the infinitive uncontracted. Otherwise the future may be formed from the infinitive.

³ Except in the verbs **andare, avere, dare, fare, sapere**, and **stare**.

Other Irregularities of Certain Verbs.

180. *Èssere* is, as before noted, entirely irregular, and must be considered as a case apart (cf. 74).

It must further be remarked that:

(1) *Dire* (for *dícere*) and *fare* (for *fácere*) have in the second person plural of the present indicative *dite* and *fate*,¹ and *dare*, *stare*, have *date*, *state*.

(2) *Dare*, *fare*, *stare*, form in the future and conditional *darò*, *darèi*; *farò*, *farèi*; *starò*, *starèi*. This is explained by the fact that these verbs are only apparently, not really, of the first conjugation.²

The ordinarily regular persons of the preterite and the whole of the imperfect subjunctive are also slightly irregular in *dare* and *stare*, the *a* changing to *e*: *dèsti*, “thou gavest”, *dèmmo*, “we gave”, *dèssi*, “I might give”, etc.; also *stèsti*, *stèmmo*, *stèste*, *stèssi*, etc.

(3) The imperative, which ordinarily follows the present indicative, is in the verbs *avére*, *sapére*, and *volére* like the present subjunctive: *abbi*, *abbiate*; *sappi*, *sappiate*; *vogli*, *vogliate*.

Verbs whose stem ends in *l*, *n*, or *r* frequently drop the final *i* of the singular imperative:

Pon! Put it down!

Vièn quà! Come here!

Andare, *dare*, *dire*, *fare*, and *stare* also drop this *i*—*va'*, *da'*, *di'*, *fa'*, *sta'*.

(4) Most compound verbs follow the irregularities of their primary. Those that differ from it in any way

¹ Cf. French *dites*, *faites*.

² Cf. the Latin forms.

are given special mention (cf. Table of Irregular Verbs, *fare*, *stare*, etc.).

Impersonal Verbs. Defective Verbs.

181. A defective verb is one only certain forms of which exist.¹ An impersonal verb is one used only in the third person singular. Even this form has no real subject (although *gli* is sometimes the apparent subject; cf. 86, foot-note 3, and 94), since the verb precludes all idea of any person or thing producing or receiving the action which it denotes. Impersonal verbs are either essentially so or occasionally so used. Verbs essentially impersonal are: *piovere*, "to rain"; *avvenire*, "to happen"; *bisognare*, "to be necessary", etc.

Verbs often used impersonally are: *convenire*, "to be fitting"; *parere*, "to appear"; *bastare*, "to be enough", etc.; also *essere* and *fare*:

Piùve? No, *névíca*. Is it raining? No, it is snowing.

Faceva caldo ieri e tonava molto. It was warm yesterday and it thundered a great deal.

Le piace questo poema? Do you like this poem?

Punto. Pare che l'autore sia uno stupido. Not at all. It seems as though the author were a blockhead.

È meglio così. It is better thus.

(*Exercises XXXII, XXXIII, and XXXIV.*)

¹ The defective verbs are included in the alphabetical list, p. 198.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



contro,¹ against.

dopo, after.

fra (tra), among, between.

senza, without.

verso, toward.

(a) The usage of **di** before a personal pronoun is not obligatory with **fra (tra)** and **verso**:

Lo farò dopo pranzo. I shall do it after dinner.

Sono venuti dopo di me. They came after me.

È rimasto senza danaro. He was without money.

Mia figlia non può andare senza di me. My daughter cannot go without me.

Il loro astio era tanto acre contro di lei quanto contro Raimondo. Their wrath was as fierce against her as against Raymond.

But: **Fra noi or fra di noi**, "among us"; **Verso lui or verso di lui**, "toward him".

184. The following prepositions are usually followed by a:

accanto,² } beside, near.
accosto, }

addosso,³ upon (one's back),
about.

allato, beside.

a mezzo (in mezzo), in the
midst (of).

appetto, facing, opposite.

appresso, near, beside.

attorno, around.

attraverso, across.

avanti (davanti), in front
(of).

conforme, according (to).

davanti, } before.
dinanzi, }

dintorno (intorno), around.

dirimpetto, opposite.

entro, within (of time).

fino,⁴ until, as far as.

¹ Cf. 186.

² Takes also **di**.

³ Also an adverb. Used in many idioms where it cannot be translated, as: **Ha febbre addosso**, "he has fever".

⁴ Used also with **da** and with **in**: **Andrò fino a Firenze**, "he will go as far as Florence"; **Non l'ho visto fino da ieri**, "I have not seen him since yesterday"; **Vado fino in cima**, "I am going to the top".

innanzi, before. [around. **inquanto**,
incirca (*or circa*), about, **in riguardo**, } in regard (to).
in fáccia, opposite. **in rispetto**, }
in fondo, at the end, bottom, **rasente**, close (to, by).
in the midst. **vicino**, near (by).

(a) **Insieme**, “together”, usually takes **con**, occasionally **a**.

185. The following prepositions and prepositional locutions are usually followed by **di**:

a causa ,	} on account (of). ¹	a malgrado , notwithstanding.
a motivo ,		appiè , at the foot (of).
a ragione ,		ad onore , in honor (of).
al di là , on the other side (of).		ad onta , in spite (of).
al di quà , this side (of).		in cámbio , in exchange.
a dispetto , in spite (of).		in luogo ,
a favore , in the favor (of).		invece ,
a forza , by means (of), with much.		} instead (of).
fuori or all' infuori , outside (of).		per mezzo , by means (of).
		prima , before.

186. The following take either **a** or **di**, **di** preferably before a personal pronoun²:

contro (contra), against.	oltre , beyond, besides.
dentro , within.	presso , near, close by.
dietro , behind.	sopra , above.
in mezzo , in the midst.	sotto , beneath.

187. The following take **da**:

di là , that side.	di quà , this side.
---------------------------	----------------------------

(a) The following take **da** or **di**:

giù , down.	lontano ,	} far.
	lungi ,	

(b) **Giù**, “down” and **su**, “up”, may also be followed by **per**, especially if they are preceded by **di**:

¹ It will be observed that many of these take “of” in English.

² Cf. 183.

Corrévano giù per la sçesa. They were running down the slope.

Egli ha prešo di su per la collina. He has taken the up-hill road.

188. Prepositions regularly precede the word governed. The simple prepositions are usually repeated before each of several substantives governed¹:

Il padre di Giovanni e di Giuseppe. The father of John and Joseph.

Cárico d' anni e d' onõri. Loaded with years and honors.

Idiomatic Distinctions.

189. The usage and meaning of prepositions is in all languages most idiomatic. It can be thoroughly learned only by careful observation and long practice. The following paragraphs show different renderings for the commoner English prepositions.

190. ABOUT.

(1) In the sense of "around" = **attorno a, intorno a, dintorno a**:

Andava solo attorno alla chiesa. He went alone about the church.

(2) In the sense of "concerning" = **di, a**:

Parlavamo di lui. We were talking about him.

A che cosa pensa? What are you thinking about?

(3) In the sense of "approximately" = **circa, prešo a poco, su, in su, da**:

V' érano circa due çento uõmini. There were about two hundred men.

Che ora è? Sono le úndici prešo a poco. What time is it? About eleven.

¹ Cf. 46.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books' Full Membership provides unlimited access to more than 28,000 volumes of Christian literature for \$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

193. BECAUSE OF.

= **a causa di, per motivo di:**

A causa della sua stanchezza. Because of her fatigue.

194. BEFORE.

(1) Denoting time = **prima di, innanzi (a), dinanzi a:**

Partì prima di me. He left before me.

Innanzi quel tempo, or innanzi a quel tempo. Before that time.

Dinanzi a me non fur cose create. Before me was nothing created.

(2) Denoting place = **davanti, dinanzi:**

Davanti (or dinanzi) al giudice. Before the judge, in the presence of the judge.

195. BY.

(1) Denoting the agent after a passive = **da:**

Lo scolare venne punito dal maestro. The pupil was punished by the teacher.

(a) Or descriptive = **di:**

Fu ferito di una spada. He was wounded by a sword.

(2) Denoting way, means, etc. = **per:**

È venuta per la posta. It came by post.

Viaggia per terra. He is traveling by land.

Lo afferrò pel vestito. He seized him by his clothes.

(3) Denoting measure = **di, su:**

Più grande di due piedi. Bigger by two feet.

Due metri su quattro. Two meters by four.

(4) Denoting manner = **da:**

L'ho fatto da me. I did it by myself.

(5) In the sense of "beside" = **accanto a:**

Èra seduto accanto a lui. I was sitting beside him.

(6) Unclassified:

Di giorno e di notte. By day and by night.

Lò conòsco di vista. I know him by sight.

A due pèr vòlta. Two by two.

Imparátelo a mēte. Learn it by heart.

Muóiono a migliáia. They are dying by thousands.

La riconòsco al color dèi capelli. I know her by the color of her hair.

196. FOR.

(1) In the sense of "instead of", "on account of" = **pèr**:

L' hò fatto pèr lei. I did it for you.

L' hò pèso pèr suo fratello. I took him for his brother.

Èccone uno pèr vòj. Here is one for you.

Bisogna partire pèr Pisa. We must start for Pisa.

I mièi consigli li sèrbo pèr mè. I keep my own counsel, I keep my opinions to myself.

(2) Denoting duration of past time = **da**:

Dimòra a Roma da mòlti anni. He has been living in Rome for many years.

Li cercava da trè mèsi. He has been looking for them for three months.

(3) Denoting duration of present time = **pèr**, **durante** —or "for" is often not rendered at all in Italian:

Gemmati era andato a Pistòia pèr un paio di giòrni. G. had gone to Pistoia for a couple of days.

Durante sèi anni. For six years.

Resterà quattro mèsi. He will remain for four months.

197. FROM.

(1) Denoting separation = **da**, **di**¹:

Vengo da Parigi. I come from Paris.

Partii súbito di casa. I left home at once.

(2) Denoting the time from which = **fin da**:

¹ The separation is more forcibly expressed by **da**. Cf. 213, Remark 2.

Fin da quel momento non ne parlò più. From that moment he spoke no more of it.

(3) Denoting cause = **di**:

Soffre di nevralgia. She is suffering from neuralgia.

198. IN, INTO.

(1) Denoting time or place = **in**:

Avvenne in marzo. It happened in March.

È andato in campagna. He has gone into the country.

Mettetevelo in tasca. Put it in your pocket.

(2) In the sense of "within" in speaking of time = **fra**:

Verranno fra due giorni. They will come in two days.

(3) Denoting place after a superlative, also the time of day (morning, afternoon, etc.) = **di**:

È il più bel paese del mondo. It is the most beautiful country in the world.

Èrano le tre del dopoprano. It was three in the afternoon.

(4) In description = **di**:

Èrano vestite di bianco. They were dressed in white.

(5) Unclassified:

È a casa? Is he in?

Avanti! Come in!

Èra cieco da un occhio. He was blind in one eye.

Stava colla spada alla mano. He stood sword in hand.

199. OF.

(1) = **di**:

Alcuni di loro sono degl' ingrati. Some of them are ungrateful.

È un uomo d' ingegno. He is a man of talent.

(2) Unclassified:

Il cuore mi batteva come ad un ragazzo di quíndici anni. My heart beat like that of a lad of fifteen.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



203. TILL, UNTIL.

= **fino a, sino a** :

Vi starò fino a domani alla sera. I shall stay there until to-morrow evening.

204. TO.

(1) Denoting the indirect object = **a** (**ad** before a vowel) :

L'ho dato ad un mio amico. I gave it to a friend.

(2) Denoting the end of motion often = **in** :

Sono andati in¹ Francia. They have gone to France.

È caduto in terra. It has fallen to the ground.

(3) In the sense of "to the house of" or *to* a person = **da** :

Sono andati dal Signor Bardi. They have gone to Mr. B.'s.

(4) In the sense of "towards" = **verso** :

Con amore verso Dio e verso gli uomini. With love to God and man.

(5) In the sense of "within" = **fra** :

Dissi fra me. I said to myself.

205. TOWARDS.

= **verso**. Cf. 204 (4).

206. UNDER, UNDERNEATH.

= **sotto, di sotto** :

È sotto la tavola. Guardate sotto di voi. Cf. 186.

207. WITH.

(1) In the sense of "along with" = **con** or **insieme con²** :

Vanno con noi, or Vanno insieme con noi.² They are going with us.

(2) Denoting instrumentality = **con** :

¹ In is so used before the name of a country, never before that of a city: **Sono andati a Parigi.**

² Or **insieme a**. Cf. 184 (a).

L' ha fatto con una semplice matita. He did it with an ordinary pencil.

(3) Descriptive = **a, da, di, or con** :

L' uomo ai (dai, coi) capelli canuti. The gray-haired man.

Con suo pugnale del manico bello. With his dagger with the beautiful handle.

Cammina a capo chino. He walks with bowed head.

(4) In the sense of "at the house of", etc. = **da** :

Dimorava molti anni da¹ noi. He lived many years with us.

(5) "With" of specification = **di** :

Fu punito di morte. He was punished with death.

(6) In the sense of "from", "on account of", and after a number of verbs and adjectives = **di** :

Piangeva di rabbia. She was weeping with rage.

È dotato di molti talenti. He is endowed with many talents.

(7) Unclassified :

Che fece delle forbici? What did she do with the scissors?

208. WITHIN.

(1) In the sense of "inside of" = **dentro (di, a)** :

Dentro di me. Within me.

Dentro al mio cuore. Within my heart.

(2) In the sense of "between", "in the course of" = **fra (tra), dentro** :

Fra² (or dentro a) queste mura. Within these walls.

Fra tre giorni. Within three days.

209. WITHOUT.

(1) In the sense of "outside of" = **fuori di** :

Fuori delle mura. Without the walls.

(2) Denoting deprivation = **senza** :

¹ Cf. 213.

² Cf. 204 (5).

Senza l'assistenza di nessuno. Without the assistance of anybody.

Use of *a*, *di*, and *da*.

210. Since *a*, *di*, and *da* are the prepositions oftenest used, and since they are often used where they have in English no equivalent, special instruction concerning their use is necessary.

211. *A* is used in general to express an idea of *direction towards*, often where there is no such notion in English. It is used:

(1) To indicate the indirect object,—that *to* or *for* which the action is performed:

Datemelo a me. Give it to me.

Fammi questo favore a me. Do me this favor.

(2) Before an infinitive after verbs of motion, also after verbs of accustoming, attaining, beginning, compelling, continuing, hastening, helping, learning, preparing, and teaching. All these verbs express *direction towards* some goal. *A* in this case renders English “to” or “and”:

Andiamo a vederlo. Let us go and see him.

M'era abituato ad andarvi. I was in the habit of going there.

Cominciárono a parlarne. They began to speak of it.

Seguitava a seccarmi. He went on boring me.

I piccini imparavano a scrívere. The children were learning to write.

Insegno a mio fratello a léggere. I am teaching my brother to read.

(3) In general after verbs which imply direction towards, as:

Avvicínati a me. Come near me.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership
provides unlimited
access to more than
28,000 volumes of
Christian literature for
\$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

(5) After a noun followed by another noun descriptive of or limiting the first (but not indicative of material, in which case **di** is used, 212, or purpose, which is expressed by **da**, 213).

Usually the two nouns form in English a compound noun:

Una barca a vela. A sailboat.

Una scala a lumaca. A winding stairway.

Uno sgabello a tre piedi. A three-legged stool.

Una macchina a vapore. A steam-engine.

(6) In a number of idioms, such as:

Léggere ad alta voce. To read aloud.

Avérselo a male. To take a thing ill.

A prima giunta. At first.

Non potére a meno di. Not to be able to help.

212. **Di** expresses in general a sense of possession. It is used to indicate the person possessing, also some quality possessed, as the material of which an article is made, its origin, nationality, or other characteristic:

La casa del mio amico. My friend's house.

Un anello d'oro. A gold ring (= ring of gold).

Vino di Sciampagna. Champagne (= wine from Champagne).

L' ambasciatore di Svízzera. The Swiss ambassador.

(a) The sense of description, of a quality possessed, is also expressed in many cases where the first noun is modified by a second:

Un chilogramma di burro. A kilogram of butter.

Una tazza di tè. A cup of tea.

Un bambino di cinque anni. A child of five years.

La strada di Roma. The road to Rome.

Un maestro di scuola. A schoolmaster.

Male di tēsta. Headache.

Col suo pugnale del mánico bello. With his dagger with the beautiful handle.

It is further used:

(1) Before an infinitive after all verbs except those specified under 211 (2) and 214:

Cercò di richiamare gl' Italiani all' indipendenza. He sought to recall the Italians to a state of independence.

Sapeva che suo padre smetteva di scrivere a mezzanotte. He knew that his father stopped writing at midnight.

(a) In some cases the **di** may be omitted:

Non sapete, o fingete non saper in quale stato voi vi lasciate. Certo, fingo di non saperlo, ma so.¹

(2) After the following verbs (and others less common):

abbisognare,	} to have need (of).	incaricarsi,	to take upon one's self.
avere bisogno,		informarsi,	to inform one's self (of).
abbondare,	to abound (in).	intendersi,	to understand, have skill (in).
abusare,	to abuse, make an ill use (of).	lagnarsi,	} to complain (of).
burlarsi,	to make fun (of).	lamentarsi,	
congratularsi,	to congratulate (one on something).	maravigliarsi,	to wonder (at).
contentarsi,	to content one's self (with).	occuparsi,	to occupy one's self (with).
divertirsi,	to amuse one's self (with).	pentirsi,	to repent (of).
dubitare,	to doubt (of).	profittare,	to profit (by).
fidarsi,	to trust, have confidence (in).	ricordarsi,	to remember.
impadronirsi,	to take possession (of).	ridere,	to laugh (at).
		ridersi,	to make fun (of).

¹ Goldoni, *Il Vero Amico*, II, 3.

(3) After many adjectives, such as:

abbondante , abundant, rich (in).	meritévole , deserving.
ammalato , ill.	pago , contented (with).
ávido , greedy, desirous (of).	pieno , full (of).
capace , ¹ capable (of).	póvero , poor (in).
certo , ¹ certain (of).	ricco , rich (in).
contento , contented (with).	soddisfatto , satisfied (with).
degnó , worthy (of).	vestito , clothed (with).
fecondo , fruitful.	vuoto , empty.
	etc.

(4) To express the partitive sense (cf. 47 and 48):

Ho dei fiori. I have some flowers.

(5) In comparisons (cf. 126):

Mi piace questo vino piú dell' altro. I like this wine better than the other.

Se n' andò, facendo a don Abbondio un inclino men profondo del solito. He went away, making Don A. a less profound bow than usual.

(6) Before a noun in apposition:

Quel benedett' uomo del signor curato! That blessed curate!

(7) In many adverbial expressions, such as:

Di notte. At night.	Dire di sí, di no. To say
Di primavera. In Spring-	yes, no.
Di vista. By sight. [time.	etc.

213. **Da** denotes (a) the agency by which. It also expresses in general (b) a sense of removal, of separation from:

(a) **È una macchina fatta da lui.** It is a machine made by him.

Essa è lodata da tutti. She is praised by every one.

¹ Also *incapace*, *incerto*.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



Ha veduto la Duse da Camélia? Have you seen Duse as Camille?

Ègli ti farà da padre. He will be a father to you.

(f) With adjectives of separation, deprivation, and the like, as¹:

alieno, foreign, averse.

indipendente, independent.

distante, distant.

lontano, far, remote.

diverso, different.

Dependent Infinitives.

214. The following verbs rule a dependent infinitive directly, i.e., English "to" is not to be translated:

ardire, to dare.

parere, to appear, seem.

bastare, to suffice.

occorrere, to be necessary.

bisognare, to need.

osare, to dare.

convenire, to be suitable.

potere, to be able.

desiderare, to desire.

sapere, to know.

dovere, to owe, must, ought.

sentire, to feel, hear.

essere d' uopo, } to be need-

vedere, to see.

essere mestieri, } ful.

volere, to wish.

lasciare, to let, allow.

udire, to hear.²

It will be observed that most of these verbs might be called modal auxiliaries in the wider sense of the term.

Bisogna farlo subito. It must be done at once, it is necessary to do it at once.

No, non conviene farlo. No, it is not proper to do it.

Desidera partire adesso? Do you desire to go now?

No, voglio partire alla sera. No, I want to go in the evening.

¹ Cf. (b) above.

² **Bramare**, "to long for", and **dubitare**, "to doubt", also sometimes rule the infinitive directly.

I bambini non sanno ancora discorrere. The children cannot yet talk.

Suol venire alle sei. He usually comes at six.

Avremmo dovuto saperlo. We ought to have known it.

215. After verbs of motion and those others mentioned under **211 (2)**, English “to” before an infinitive is to be rendered by **a**, otherwise by **di** (**212 (1)**), except:

(a) “to” in the sense of “in order to”, i.e., denoting purpose, which = **per**¹;

(b) “to” in the sense of “something to”, also “to” denoting duty or necessity, which = **da**²:

Devo partire subito per arrivare a tempo. I must leave at once in order to arrive in good time.

C' erano scale da scendere e salire, lunghi corridoi da percorrere, cortili da attraversare. There were stairs to be descended and ascended, long corridors to be passed through, courtyards to be crossed.

Vengano tutti, non c' è da temere! Come, all of you! There is nothing to be afraid of!

Aspettavamo per vedere il tramonto. We were waiting to see the sunset.

Quello che ha da fare è cosa di poco tempo. What he has to do is an affair of a short time.

Non m' ha da premere la mia vita. My life need not be a burden to me.

Quanti conti s' ha da rendere! How many accounts must be given!³

Io gli dava da bere. I gave him something to drink.

¹ **Stare** or **essere per** = “to be about to do anything”. Cf. **81 (a)**. It is evident that after a verb of motion either **a** or **per** may often be used.

² Cf. **avere da** = “to have to”, **84 (b)**.

³ This construction is often best translated by an English passive.

Ha qualche cosa da fare? Sì, ho moltissimo da fare.
 Have you anything to do? Yes, I have a great deal to do.

216. A preposition placed after a verb often modifies its meaning:

assistere, to aid; **assistere a**, to be present at.

cercare, to seek; **cercare di**, to seek after.

credere, to believe; **credere a**, to believe in (a person).¹

domandare, to ask; **domandare a**, to ask of (a person);
domandare di, to ask after (a person).

giocare, to play; **giocare a**, to play at (a game).

pensare, to think; **pensare a**, to think of (a person); **pensare su**, to reflect.

toccare, to touch; **toccare a**, to be the turn of, etc.

(Exercises XXXV and XXXVI.)

CHAPTER XIV.

CONJUNCTIONS, MOODS AND TENSES.

217. Following are the simple conjunctions:

anche , also. ²	o , or (o . . . o , either . . . or).
che , that.	ma , } but.
come , as.	però , }
e , and (e . . . e , both . . . and).	pure , yet.
nè , neither (nè . . . nè , neither . . . nor).	se , if, whether.

218. Following are the principal secondary conjunctions, also words sometimes conjunctions and sometimes relative adverbs and conjunctive locutions:

¹ But **credere in Dio, in Cristo**.

² **Anche, che**, also **nemmeno** and **neppure** elide the final vowel before **e** and **i**.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership
provides unlimited
access to more than
28,000 volumes of
Christian literature for
\$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

that **che**; that is, **cioè**.
 therefore, **dunque**, **perciò**,
quindi.
 though, **benchè**, **ancorchè**,
quantunque.
 unless, **a meno che**, **a meno**
che non, **ecettuato che**, **se**
non.

219. The following are sometimes followed by the subjunctive, sometimes by the indicative (cf. 233):

anche se, even if.
appena che, as soon as.
di modo che, so that.
dopochè, after.
finchè, until.

until, **finchè**, **finchè non**, **sino**
a che, **infino a**.
 whence, **per lo che**.
 whereas, **considerando che**.
 whether, **se**, **sia**, **sia che**.
 while, whilst, **mentre che**.
 yet, **nulladimeno**, **pure**, **però**.

220. The following are always followed by the subjunctive (cf. 232 (5)):

acciochè, **affinchè**, **a condizione che**, **provided**
that.
a meno che non, unless.
ancorchè, even if.
a patto che, on condition
that.
avanti che, before.
avvegna che, **benchè**, **although**
caso (che), in case.
come se, as if.
dato che, granted that.
eccetto che non, unless.
finchè non, until.

onde, wherefore.
quando, **se**, **if**.
tantochè, as long as.
tostochè, as soon as.
malgrado che, **non ostante che**, **notwith-**
standing
that.
perchè, in order that.
posto che, supposing that.
prima che, before.
 purchè, provided that.
quandanche, even if.
quantunque, although.
quasi, as if.
sebbene, although.
semprechè, provided.
senza che, except.
solochè, if only, provided
that.
supposto che, supposing that.

MOODS AND TENSES.

The Infinitive.

221. The infinitive is a verbal noun. As a noun it may be accompanied by an article and governed by a preposition, and as a verb it may at the same time rule an object:

Il leggere dei buoni libri è útile alla gioventù. Reading good books is useful to the young.

Mi secca ol suo eterno chiacchierare. She bores me with her ceaseless chattering.

Il non aver egli risposto mi fece dubitare. His not having answered made me feel doubtful.

(a) The infinitive used as a noun is usually to be rendered in English by the present participle. Cf. 222.

(b) The article may be omitted with the infinitive as with any other noun (Cf. 45 (4)). It is also usually omitted after the prepositions **di**, **dopo di**, **invece di**, **prima di**, and **senza**:

Cominciare è mostrare, a proprio rischio e pericolo, una via non battuta e da battersi. To begin is to point out, at one's own risk and peril, an unbeaten road, a road that must be beaten.

Scrive invece di venire. He writes instead of coming.

(c) The infinitive after the words **che**, **chi**, **come**, **donde**, **dove**, forms with them *one* substantive concept, which may then be used as the object of a verb, etc.:

Non so dove andare, ne che fare. I do not know where to go nor what to do.

(d) In the same way an infinitive after **è** with an adjective or adverb forms one concept:

È meglio non dirlo. It is better not to say it (i.e., “not-to-say-it is better”).

The student should reason out the cases presented. For instance:

È più facile criticare che far meglio. It is easier to criticise than to do better (i.e., criticism is easier than doing better). Therefore the phrase should be as above and not: **È più facile di criticare che di far meglio.**

(e) An English infinitive is often to be rendered in Italian by the subjunctive. Cf. 232 (1).

The Present Participle.

222. Neither the present participle in **-ante**, **-ente**, nor that in **-ando**, **-endo**, may ever be used as a noun.¹ The English present participle where it is a verbal noun must be rendered by the only verbal noun existing in Italian, i.e., by the infinitive (cf. above, 221 and (a)). The question occurs with regard to every such English construction: Is the participle really a verb or a noun?

Three categories may be distinguished:

(1) Where the participle is evidently a verb:

I saw him going to the city (= I saw him. He was going to the city).

In this case the corresponding verbal form, i.e., the participle in **-ando**, **-endo**, is used:

L' ho visto andando alla città. (Or **L' ho visto che andava alla città.**)

(2) Where the participle is apparently, but not really and necessarily, a noun. In this case it is in English governed by a preposition, but an attempt

¹ Cf. 111 and 112. The **-ante**, **-ente** forms where not adjectives become nouns, but they are never verbs used as nouns.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



The Past Participle.

223. The English past participle when it follows a transitive, especially a verb of perceiving, also *éssere*, *fare*, *lasciare*, is to be rendered by the Italian infinitive. An English passive infinitive is also rendered by the active infinitive after *lasciare* and often after the preposit on *da*:

L' ho sentito dire. I have heard it said.

Lò vidi ammazzare. I saw him killed.

Hò fatto fare un ábito. I have had a coat made.

È un uomo da temére. He is a man to be feared.

Non si lásciano mai vedére. They never let themselves be seen.

Chè cosa è da fare? What is to be done?

(a) The use of the passive is avoided¹ in many other cases in Italian by using the infinitive:

Credevo ésser severamente ferito. I thought I was severely wounded.

224. A whole protasis, relative clause, or the like, is often, and elegantly, expressed in Italian by a present participle, a past participle, or an infinitive:

Essendo malata mia madre non posso venire. My mother being ill (or: Since my mother is ill) I cannot come.

Guardandolo bene, ne sarebbe sicuro. If he looked at it well he would be sure of the matter.

Disse ésser lui uomo ricco. He said that he was a rich man.

Vedutagli tale disposizione, un fratel suo lò tólse con sé a bottega. A brother of his who had seen his bent took him into the shop with him.

Passata questa settimana, non m' appagherò più di chiác-

¹ The passive is much less frequent in Italian than in English. Cf. 104 (a).

chiere. Once this week is over I shall no longer content myself with talk.

Dette che ebbe queste parole se ne andò. As soon as he had said these words he went away.

A vederlo se lo crederebbe un mendicante. From his appearance one would think him a beggar.

Mio padre diceva esser difficile salvar un uomo che non voleva salvarsi lui. My father used to say that it was hard to save a man who did not want to save himself.

Rendering of Past Tenses in Italian.

225. An action represented as unfinished and still continuing is often expressed by the present tense:

Quant' è che siete qui? How long have you been here?

Sono in Italia da sei mesi. I have been in Italy about six months.

(a) A past action if finished in the past is more vividly described by the use of the present tense:

Aspettavo un' ora più o meno, eppoi eccolo che viene. I waited an hour, more or less, and then he came.

226. An action represented as:

(1) Incomplete;

(2) Habitual;

(3) Going on when some other past action took place; is expressed by the imperfect tense:

Io l' aspettava ancora. I was still waiting for him.

Dormivo sempre bene allora. I always slept well then.

Il cagnino seguiva ordinariamente. The little dog usually followed.

Leggevo d alta voce quando egli entrò. I was reading aloud when he entered.

227. An action represented as having taken place in the past, but in a past either recently or not yet

entirely elapsed, and at a moment not definitely indicated, is rendered by the past indefinite:

Gliēn' hō parlato. I have spoken to him about it.

Lē ha viste? Have you seen them?

228. An action entirely past, completed in the past, and which happened at a fixed time in the past, is rendered by the preterite.¹ This is the Italian narrative tense. It is more used in books or formal public address than in conversation or easy correspondence:

Gli parlai un mese fa. I spoke to him a month ago.

Lē vidi in ottobre. I saw them in October.

Chē bella gita feci ieri con mio padre! What a delightful excursion I took yesterday with my father!

(a) The difference in the usage of these tenses may be made clearer by the following examples:

Ha perduto la sua borsa? Have you lost (at a time not indicated) your purse?

Sì, ma l' hō ritrovata. Yes, but I found it again.

La perdei la settimana passata, e la ritrovai ieri l' altro. I lost it last week and found it again day before yesterday.

The usage of all tenses is best learned by careful reading.

The Future

229. The future is used in Italian where it is not in English²:

(1) In dependent clauses in which in English the present tense really expresses futurity:

Partirò domani se farà bel tempo. I shall leave to-morrow if the weather *is* fine.

¹ It follows that the preterite must be used after **appena chē**, **tosto chē**, "as soon as", and the like.

² For the future of impending action, cf. 81 (a) and 215 (a).



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership
provides unlimited
access to more than
28,000 volumes of
Christian literature for
\$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

Se m' interrogava, gli rispondeva di no. If he had asked me I should have answered him no.

(b) The conditional anterior is often used where we should expect the simple tense:

La scala distava dal davanzale un buon tratto. Come avrèbbero potuto attaccarvi? The ladder was quite a distance from the window-sill. How could they get hold of it?

Imbarcandolo a Génova sul finir d' aprile, i suoi non avevan pensato che in América egli avrèbbe trovato l' inverno, e l' avevan vestito da estate. His family, putting him on board ship in Genoa at the end of April, had not reflected that in America he would find winter, and had dressed him suitably for summer.

The Imperative.

231. The imperative is used as in English, i.e., to express a command. The missing persons are supplied from the present subjunctive:

Non lo fáccia. Do not (you) do it.

Che non páiano. Let them not appear.

Non domandare che quello che ti è necessário. Ask only what is necessary for you.

(a) The imperfect subjunctive may also express command. Cf. 232.

The Subjunctive.

232. A verb expressing an action indicated by what has gone before as in some way doubtful is made subjunctive.

It follows that the subjunctive is usually found in a subordinate clause. It is used:

(1) After verbs expressive of command, consent,

denial, desire, fear, hearsay, hope, ignorance, necessity, opinion (belief, approval, disapproval, etc.), preference, surprise, will, wonder, and the like:

Desídero che venga súbito. I want him to come soon.

Si dice che ęssa sia partita per Inghilterra. They say that she has gone to England.

Vorrei solamente che mi credessero. I only want them to believe me, only wish that they would believe me.

Non mi piace che facciano cosí. I do not like them to do so.

Mi maraviglio che siate ancora qui. I am surprised that you are still here.

Credevo che fossero partiti. I thought they had gone.

Pensi Lei quanto ció mi affliggesse. Think how much this (must have) distressed me.

Bisogna che ci scrivano. They must write us.

Non vorrei mai che credeste ch'io avessi scritto per passione. I should never wish you to think that I had written out of passion.

(2) In expressions of emotion or sentiment:

Peccato che non sia arrivato! What a pity that he has not come!

Volesse Dio!¹ God grant it! Would to God!

Potessi scoprire l'arcano!¹ Could I but discover the secret!

(3) When the antecedent is qualified by a comparative superlative or by *solo*, *único*, *primo*, or *último*:

Ę la prima volta che l'abbia visto. It is the first time that I have seen it.

Tu sei l'único amico di cui possa fidarmi. You are the only friend in whom I can confide.

(4) After a qualifying or restrictive relative clause:

¹ This is an example of what is sometimes called the "independent subjunctive", or "subjunctive in a principal clause".

Cerco d' un servo che parli inglese. I am looking for a servant who speaks (= can speak) English.

Scelga un alloggiò dov' Ella possa stare più tranquillo. Choose a dwelling where you can be quieter.

(a) Also after indefinite relatives such as **chiunque**, "any one", "whosoever", and indefinite adjectives such as **qualunque**, "whatever":

Chiunque sia, non vòglio vederlo. Whoever he may be, I do not want to see him.

(5) After the conjunctions given under 220:

Andrò dovunque sia egli. I will go wherever he is.

Gli scriverò prima che parta. I shall write him before he leaves.

Lò dico acciochè ne sáppiano la verità. I say it in order that they may know the truth about the matter.

Quand' anche non l' avessi detto. Even if I had not said it.

233. After the conjunctions given under 219 and in many other cases¹ the question, Shall the indicative or the subjunctive be employed? is to be decided by determining whether or not the action is indicated as doubtful:

Se studierà, suo padre sarà contento. If he studies, his father will be satisfied.

Se studiasse suo padre sarebbe contento. If he would study (but often he does not), his father would be satisfied.

Si dà per certo che la pace sia fatta. They say for certain that peace is made.

È certo che la pace è fatta. It is certain that peace is made.

È la più bella donna che io abbia mai vista. She is (as far

¹ In some cases of so-called "subjunctive in a principal clause" one of these conjunctions is understood: **Fosse anche un magistrato sarei contrario alla sua opinione.** Were he (=if he were) a magistrate I should not agree with him.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



gli attestati. They were waiting for the twelve boys to come in to bestow the certificates.

Avrei più fiducia in lui se avesse più voglia d'imparare. I should have more confidence in him if he had more desire to learn.

(a) The compound tenses in general follow the rules laid down for the primary ones, the auxiliary being reckoned as the verb:

Họ dubitato che vengano. I have doubted whether they would come.

Aveva dubitato che venissero. I had doubted whether they would come.

(b) The past definite may, however, be followed by either the present or the imperfect subjunctive, depending on whether the action related in the secondary clause is represented as taking place in present or in past time:

Iddio ci ha dato la ragione, affinché ce ne serviamo. God has given us reason in order that we may make use of it.

E come si vendicasse il Buondelmonte lo avete saputo. And you know, you have heard before, how B. avenged himself.

(Exercises XXXVII and XXXVIII.)

CHAPTER XV.

ADVERBS. NUMERALS AND NUMERICAL VALUES.
INTERJECTIONS.

ADVERBS.

236. Adverbs may be distinguished as: (1) Adverbs of manner; (2) Adverbs of place; (3) Adverbs of degree and of comparison; (4) Adverbs of affirmation

and of negation; (5) Adverbs of time; (6) Numerical adverbs.

Adverbs of Manner.

237. Most adverbs of manner are formed from adjectives by adding **-mente** to the feminine¹ singular:

certo, certain; **certamente**, certainly.

franco, frank; **francamente**, frankly.

onesto, honest; **onestamente**, honestly.

sincero, sincere; **sinceramente**, sincerely.

(a) Adjectives ending in **e**² when that **e** is preceded by any consonant except **l** and **r** simply add **-mente**; those ending in **e** preceded by **l** or **r** drop the **e** and add **-mente**³:

felice, happy; **felicemente**, happily.

forte, strong; **fortemente**, strongly.

facile, easy; **facilmente**, easily.

difficile, difficult; **difficilmente**, in a difficult manner, with difficulty.

particolare, particular; **particolarmente**, particularly.

(b) **Altrimenti**, "otherwise" (from **altro-a**), and **parimenti** "in like manner" (**pari**), are irregular, isolated forms, and **guarimente**, "(not) much", "(not) long", **quasimente**, "almost", are remarkable as showing **-mente** added to an adverb.

238. Other adverbs of manner, fewer in number, end in **e** or **i**:

bene, well.

male, badly.

così, thus, in this manner.

volentieri, gladly.

etc.

¹ **Mēns**, **mēnte**, being a Latin feminine.

² Which have but one termination for masculine and feminine. Cf. 109.

³ Adjectives in **-lle** do not drop the **e**: **molle**, "soft"; **mollemente**, "softly".

(a) A certain number ending in **o** are really adjectives used as adverbs ¹:

alto , loud.	presto , quickly.
basso , low.	súbito , suddenly, at once.
	etc.

239. Another class of adverbs is formed by means of the suffix **-one** (**-oni**), added usually to nouns:

È caduto boccone. He has fallen on his face.
Andar brancolone (or **tastone**). To grope one's way.
Andar carpone. To go on all fours.
Star gomitoni. To lean on one's elbows.

In the same way:

cavalcione , astride.	rotolone , rolling.
ginocchioni , kneeling.	sdruciolone , slipping.
	etc.

240. Adverbial locutions are common, as:

a gara , competing.	indarno ,	} in vain.
a malincuore , unwillingly.	invano ,	
a vicenda , by turns.	in fretta , in haste.	
adágio , slowly.	senza dúbbio , doubtless.	
	etc.	

(a) Such locutions are found also among the other classes of adverbs:

appena , as soon as, hardly.	d' ora innanzi , henceforth.
di quando in quando , from time to time.	fra poco , soon.
di rado , seldom.	per tempo , betimes, early.
	talvolta , sometimes.
	etc.

¹ Some adjectives from which the **-mente** adverb has been regularly formed are yet used in their adjective forms in certain expressions: **Parlar chiaro**, "to speak plainly"; **Vivere felice**, "to live happily".



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership
provides unlimited
access to more than
28,000 volumes of
Christian literature for
\$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

Ve n' è molti. There are a great many of them.

Viene dalla città? No, vi torna. Is he coming from the city? No, he is returning to it.

Venite quà.—Andate lì. Come here.—Go there.

Fatti in costà. Go that way (the way near you).

Mia moglie è di là. My wife is there (e.g., in the next room).

Adverbs of Degree and of Comparison.

244. The principal adverbs of comparison are **così**, **come**,¹ **più**, **meno**,² **di**, and **che**.³

Following are the principal adverbs of degree (some times called adverbs of quantity):

abbastanza , enough,	suffi-	poco , little.
ciently.		quanto , how much, as much.
alquanto , somewhat.		tanto , so much.
assai , very.		troppo , too much. ⁴
molto , much.		

etc.

Adverbs of Affirmation and Negation.

245. The principal adverbs of affirmation are:

sì ,	} yes.	davvero , indeed, truly, of course.
già ,		sicuro , yes indeed, of course.

(a) **Già**⁵ is used in assenting to a self-evident truth; in other cases **sì** is employed:

Piùve? Sì. Is it raining? Yes.

Piùve a catinelle.—Già. It is pouring.—Quite true.

¹ Cf. 121.

² Cf. 122 and 125.

³ Cf. 126.

⁴ For **molto**, **poco**, **quanto**, **tanto**, **troppo**, adj., cf. 128.

⁵ **Già già** sometimes = "almost": **Il sole toccava già già la cima del monte.** The sun was almost touching the mountain peak.

246. The principal adverbs of negation are:

nò , no, not.	mai ,	} never.
nòn , not.	giammai ,	
nòn-mica ,	nòn-mai ,	
nòn-punto ,	} not at all.	nòn-più , no longer.
niènte affatto ,		

(a) **Nò** is sometimes used in the sense of **nòn**. It is then placed after the noun or the statement of fact which is made negative:

Ha denari ma amici nò. He has money but not friends.

Sa parlare, pensare nò. He can talk, he cannot think.

(b) **Nòn** always immediately precedes the verb¹ unless the latter is accompanied by a conjunctive pronoun, which then stands between. In the locutions **nòn-mica**, **nòn-mai**, etc., the verb stands between the two members:

Nòn parla —Nòn dice niènte.

Nòn è mica tardi. Non ha mai detto così.⁴

Non lo farò mai più.

(c) **Nòn** has not a negative value in the **chè nòn** of comparison,² nor in **finchè nòn**, “until”, **sè nòn chè**, “except that”, etc.:

Hò più di denaro chè non credevo. I have more money than I thought.

Lò studierò finchè nòn l'avrò imparato. I shall study it until I have learned it.

Nòn nè ha chè due.³ He has only two.

¹ In a compound tense the auxiliary is considered the verb. Cf. 235 (a).

² Cf. 127.

³ = “he has not but two”.

Adverbs of Time.

247. The principal adverbs of time are:

adesso, {	now.	quando, when.
ora, }		sempre, always.
allora, then.		súbito, at-once.
di buon' ora, }	early.	talvolta, sometimes.
per tempo, }		tardi, late.
domani, to-morrow.		tosto, soon.
ieri, yesterday.		último, at last.
oggi, to-day.		prima, at first. ¹
		etc.

Comparison of Adverbs.

248. Adverbs are regularly compared like adjectives (cf. 119–127):

Lò fa così facilmente come suo fratello.

Lò fa più facilmente che suo fratello.

Lò fa meno facilmente. Lò fa il più facilmente di tutti.

Lò fa molto facilmente. Lò fa manco male di me.

249. The following are compared irregularly:

bene, well	méglio, better	il méglio, ² best
		beníssimo, {
		ottimamente, } very well
male, badly	péggio, worse	il péggio, worst
		malíssimo, {
		pessimamente, } very badly
molto, much (very)	più, more	il più, most
		moltíssimo, very much
poco, little	meno, less	il meno, } least,
		pochíssimo, } very little

¹ Che is an adverb of time = quando in sentences like: Io l' ho visto che faceva ancor più caldo. I have seen it when it was still hotter.

² Méglio is an adjective-noun in such expressions as: Questo gli parve il méglio o il meno male, "this seemed to him the best course, or the least bad". In fare alla méglio it is again an adjective, maniera or some such noun being understood.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



mediately. An adverb qualifying an adjective, another adverb, or a phrase usually precedes it:

Rarissimamente incontravano due o tre viaggiatori a cavallo. They met at very long intervals two or three travelers on horseback.

Appena arrivati sono venuti a trovarmi. They came to see me as soon as they arrived.

Essa è alquanto più attempata. She is somewhat older.

L'han fatto apposta. They have done it purposely.

Egli guardava il ragazzo sempre più fissamente. He looked always more fixedly at the boy.

NUMERALS

Cardinal Numerals.

251. The cardinal numerals are:

1 uno	18 diciotto	60 sessanta
2 due	19 diciannove	70 settanta
3 tre	20 venti	80 ottanta
4 quattro	21 ventuno ²	90 novanta
5 cinque	22 ventidue	100 cento
6 sei	23 ventitrè	101 centuno ⁵
7 sette	24 ventiquattro	etc.
8 otto	25 venticinque	120 cento venti,
9 nove	26 ventisei	etc.
10 dieci	27 ventisette	200 dugento (duecento,
11 undici	28 ventotto ³	ducento)
12 dodici	29 ventinove	300 trecento
13 tredici	30 trenta	etc.
14 quattordici	31 trentuno ⁴	1000 mille
15 quindici	etc.	2000 due mila
16 sedici	40 quaranta	
17 diciassette ¹	50 cinquanta	

(a) Uno is the only cardinal which has a feminine

¹ Or diciassette

² Or vent' uno.

³ Or vent' otto.

⁴ Or trent' uno.

⁵ Or cent' uno.

form: **una**.¹ If the noun modified by **ventuno**, **trentuno**, etc., follows the numeral, it is made singular; if it precedes it, it is regularly made plural:

Ventuna settimana. Twenty-one weeks.

Lire centuna. One hundred and one liras.

(b) **Millione**, “million”, **billione**, “billion”, **trillione**, “trillion”, etc., are nouns of number, having a regular plural, **milioni**, **billioni**, etc.; the plural **mila** has already been given. With these exceptions and that of **uno**, the cardinals are indeclinable.

(c) No article is used with **cento**, “a hundred”, and **mille**, “a thousand”. No conjunction is used between the different parts of a number:

Cento quarantacinque (**centoquarantacinque**), one hundred and forty-five.

(d) “Eleven hundred,” “twelve hundred”, etc., must be translated “one thousand one hundred”, etc., and not counted by hundreds:

Nell’ anno mille nove cento due. In the year nineteen hundred and two.

(e) “Both” = **tutti e due** or **i due**, “all three” = **tutti e tre** or **i tre**, etc.

(f) The numerals after twenty may be written as two words or as one (**ventidue** or **venti due**) except when the second number is *one* or *eight*, in which case they must be written as one:

Trentuno or **trent’ uno**, **trentotto**, etc.

From one hundred and forty on **cento** may be shortened into **cen**:

Cenquaranta, **censettanta**, etc.

252. The ordinal numbers are:

¹ As an adjective it has the plural forms: **gli uni**, **le une**.

1st primo	21st ventésimo primo or ventunesimo
2d secondo	22d ventésimo secondo or ventidúésimo
3d terzo	etc.
4th quarto	30th trentésimo ³
5th quinto	40th quarantésimo ³
6th sesto	etc.
7th séttime	100th centésimo
8th ottavo	110th centodécimo ⁴
9th nono	115th centoquindicésimo
10th décimo	etc.
11th undécimo or décimo primo ¹	200th dugentésimo or ducen- tésimo or duecen- tésimo
12th duodécimo or décimo secondo ¹	300th trecentésimo
13th tredécimo or décimo terzo	etc.
14th quattordicésimo or décimo quarto	1000th millésimo
15th quindicésimo or décimo quinto	2000th duemillésimo
16th sedicésimo or décimo sesto	etc.
17th diciasséttime or décimo séttime	10000th millionésimo
18th diciottésimo or décimo ottavo	etc.
19th diciannovésimo or décimo nono	
20th ventésimo ²	

(a) The ordinals are all adjectives:

La trentésima parte di novanta è tre. The thirtieth of ninety is three.

(b) Fractions are expressed by the regular ordinal numbers except "one half" = *un mezzo, una metà*. Of these *mezzo* is an adjective, *me' à* a noun:

In mezzo minuto ci salgo. In half a minute I shall come up there.

Dateme solamente la metà. Give me only half of it.

Un quinto, $\frac{1}{5}$. Due décimi, $\frac{2}{10}$. Due e mezzo, $2\frac{1}{2}$.

(c) "Firstly", "secondly" = *primo, secondo, or primieramente, secondariamente, etc.*

¹ Undicésimo, dodicésimo, also exist.

² Vigésimo is also found.

³ Trigésimo, quadragésimo, are rare.

⁴ Centésimo décimo, etc., are not allowable.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership
provides unlimited
access to more than
28,000 volumes of
Christian literature for
\$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

Questi mosso a compassione dell' amico, nell' ottobre del 1833 lo menò seco a Nápoli. Moved with compassion for his friend, in October 1833 he took him with him to Naples.

(b) The definite article is used before the numeral indicating the day of the month as in English, but it is not omitted in dating letters etc., as it is in English:

Quanti abbiamo del mese? Oggi è il dieci. What day of the month is it? To-day is the tenth.

Allora scriviamo: Firenze, il 10 (or il dieci) maggio, 1902. Then let us write: Florence, May 10, 1902.

(c) Primo is the only ordinal used in indicating the days of the month; otherwise the cardinals are employed:

Il¹ primo (di) maggio, il due maggio, il dì tre di maggio.

Time of Day.

256. The definite article is used with numerals indicating the time of day and *ora*, *ore*, is understood with all. It follows that the article is feminine, and that, except in the case of "one o'clock", the verb is plural:

Che ora è? Sono le undici. Sono le nove. Sono le otto e mezzo.

Sono le cinque meno dieci.

(a) Il tocco is commonly used instead of *l' una*, "one o'clock".

(b) Mezzo giorno = "noon", mezzanotte = "midnight". Antimeridiano = "in the morning", "a.m."; pomeridiano = "in the afternoon", "p.m.":

Arrivano alle cinque pomeridiane. They will arrive at 5 P.M.

¹ Li or ai may also be employed: Vienna li cinque (ai cinque) aprile. "Vienna, April 5."

Numerical Titles.

257. Ordinals are used in the numerical titles of rulers, also in indicating a book, chapter, etc., but no article intervenes as in English:

Carlo quinto. Charles *the* Fifth.

Libro quarto, capitolo terzo, parágrafo nono. Book the Fourth, chapter three, paragraph nine.

Luigi decimo sesto era un re sfortunato molto. Louis the Sixteenth was a very unfortunate king.

Duration of Time. Age.

258. The verb *avere* is used to denote age:

Che età (or Quanti anni) ha suo figlio? Ha cinque anni e tre mesi. How old is your son? Five years and three months.

Avrò sessantadue anni nell' aprile dell' anno venturo. Così sono adesso nel mio sessantesimo secondo anno. I shall be sixty-two years old next April. So I am now in my sixty-second year.

259. The verb *fare*, or less often *essere*, is used to denote duration of time:

Un anno fa, or È un anno. A year ago.

Dodici anni fa, or Sono dodici anni. Twelve years ago.

È molto tempo che è morto. He died a long time ago.

Miscellaneous Numerical Idioms.

260. "Twice two are four" = due via due, quattro.

"Two and two are four" = due e due fanno quattro.

"Six minus three leaves three" = sei meno tre, tre.

"A table . . . long by . . . broad" = una tavola della lunghezza di . . . e della larghezza di

INTERJECTIONS.

261. The commoner interjections and expressions used as interjections are:

(1) Expressive of joy, admiration, approval, and the like:

Ah! Ah! Oh! Oh! Bene! Well! Good! Bravo!¹
Good! Well done! Che!² What!

(2) Grief, pain, fear, pity, and the like:

Ah! Ahi! Ohi! Ahimè (or Ohimè)! Alas! Ahi misero!
Oh povero me! Wretched being that I am!
Peccato (or Che peccato)! What a pity!
Pietà! Pity! Mercy! Oh, poverino! Oh, poor thing!
Dèh! Alas! Woe!

(3) Surprise:

Oh bella! Curioso! Strange! Ehi! Ahi! E così! Per Bacco! Mah!

(4) Disdain, disgust, disapproval:

Oibò! Fie! Vergogna! Shame! Guai! Beware! Woe!
Eh, via, sciocchezze! Oh, come, nonsense! Questa è bella! A fine state of affairs!

(5) Encouragement:

Orsù! Come now! Ánimo! Courage! Di su! Speak out!

Via! via! che importa? Come, come, what does it matter?

(6) Enthusiasm, applause:

Evviva! Hurrah! Viva l' Italia! Long live Italy!

¹ This is an adjective. Thus to two persons one would say, **Bravi!**; to a woman, **Brava!**

² **Che** or **O che** is oft used, especially in Tuscany, to introduce a question implying doubt: **Che l' ábbia gia fatto!** "Can it be that he has already done it!"



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



it; if the future is not given, it and the *conditional* are to be constructed from the *infinitive*.

For the construction of the preterite see 178 and 179.

The imperative, unless otherwise stated, is like the corresponding forms of the present indicative.

IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

There are but four irregular verbs of the first conjugation.¹

1. **Andare**, to go, **andato**; **andai**; **andrò** (**anderò**).²

Present Indicative.		Imperative.	Present Subjunctive.
Vado or vò	andiamo		Vada andiamo
vai	andate	Va' andate	vada andiate
va	vanno		vada vádano

Like **andare**:

riandare, to go back again, to examine again.

trasandare, to go beyond, to neglect.

2. **Dare**, to give, **dato**; **dièdi** or **dètti**, **darò**.

Pres. Ind.	Pret. Ind.		Imperative.
Dò diamo	dièdi or dètti	dèmmo	
dai date	dèsti	dèste	da' date
dà danno	diède or dètte ³	dièdero or dèttero	
	Present Subjunctive.	Imperfect Subjunctive.	
	dia diamo	dèssi dèssiamo	
	dia diate	dèssi dèste	
	dia díano or díeno	dèsse dèssero	

Like **dare**:

ridare, to give again.

sdare, to become idle.

REMARK. The first and third sing. ind. pres. (**ridò**, **ridà**) take the written accent.

¹ Really only one, **dare**; **fare** and **stare** not belonging here originally, as their preterites show. (Cf. Latin forms.)

² Forms bracketed are for reference and are not to be learned for use in exercises. Forms preceded by "or" are alternate.

³ **Diè** also exists, pl. **dièr**, **dièro**, or **dièrono**.

3. **Fare**, to do, make; **facendo**, **fatto**; **fecì**, **farò**.

Present Indicative.		Imperative	Present Subjunctive.
faccio or fò	facciamo		faccia facciamo
fai ¹	fate	fa' fate	faccia facciate
fa ¹	fanno.		faccia facciano

Like **fare**:**affarsi**, to suit, become.**liquefare**, to liquefy.**assuefarsi**, to accustom one's self.**malfare**, to do mischief.**confarsi**, to be suitable.**mansuefare**, to tame.**contraffare**, to counterfeit.**rifare**, to do again.**disfare** (**sfare**), to undo.**soddisfare**, to satisfy.

REMARK. All these verbs take the written accent on the 1st and 3d sing. ind. pres.: **disfà**, **rifà**, etc.

4. **Stare**, to stand, be; **stato**, **stetti**, **starò**.

Pres. Ind.	Pret Ind.	Imperative.	Present Subjunctive.
stò stiamo	stetti stemmo		stia stiamo
stai state	stesti steste	sta' state	stia stiate
sta stanno	stette stettero		stia , stiano or stieno

Like **stare**:**ristare**, to cease.**sovrastare**, to stand over, to**soprastare**, to stand over, to command.

tarry.

sottostare, to be subject.

Ristà, etc., are accented like the compounds of **dare** and **fare**.

(a) **Distare**, "to be distant," is regular in the present and has no present participle; otherwise it is like **stare**; **constare**, **contrastare**, **instare**, **ostare**, etc., are regular verbs.

(Exercises *XLI* and *XLII*.)

¹ **Faci**, **face**, are also found.

IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

263. The great majority of the verbs of the second conjugation are more or less irregular.¹ Of those ending in *-ére*, only two, *godére* and *temére*, are perfectly regular, i.e., have all the regular forms without alternate irregular ones.

The following² are all the *'-ere* verbs that are perfectly regular:

<i>báttere</i>	<i>méscere</i>	<i>prémere</i>	<i>spléndere</i>
<i>crédere</i>	<i>miétere</i>	<i>ricévere</i>	<i>tóndere</i>
<i>frémere</i>	<i>páscere</i>	<i>rifléttere</i> ³	<i>véndere</i>
<i>gémere</i>	<i>péndere</i>	<i>ripétere</i>	

(a) Irregular Verbs of the Second Conjugation in *-ére*.

264. Most of these verbs are strong, i.e., stressed on the stem-vowel, only in the present indicative and subjunctive, and in the preterite,⁴ the past participle being, except in *persuadére* and *rimanére*, weak, i.e., ending regularly in *-úto*. The infinitive, the vowel of the antepenult being stressed, is never contracted; the imperfect tenses may therefore be formed directly from it. The future and conditional are in some verbs contracted.

I.

Verbs irregular in the present tenses,⁵ but having the regular weak preterite:

¹ Conversely, the great majority of all irregular verbs are of the second conjugation.

² And their compounds.

³ In the sense of "to meditate." See 68, p. 184.

⁴ Some have the weak preterite.

⁵ Sometimes with contracted future.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership
provides unlimited
access to more than
28,000 volumes of
Christian literature for
\$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

Like **cadére**:

accadére, to happen.

decadére, to decoy.

ricadére, to fall again.

scadére, to fall off.

9. **Sapére**, to know, **saputo**; **sèppi**, **saprò**.

Present Indicative.

sò sappiamo

sai sapete

sa sanno

Imperative.

sappi sappiate

Present Subjunctive.

sáppia sappiamo

“ **sappiate**

“ **sáppiano**

10. **Tenére**, to hold, **tenuto**; **tènni**, **terrò**.

Present Indicative.

tèngo teniamo (tenghiamo)

tièni tenete

tiène tēngono

Present Subjunctive.

tēnga teniamo (tenghiamo)

“ **teniate**

“ **tēngano**

Like **tenere**:

appartenére, to belong. [to.

attenérsi, to belong, to hold

contenére, to contain.

intrattenére, to entertain,

delay. [keep.

mantenére, to maintain,

ottenére, to obtain.

rattenére, to detain.

ritenére, to detain, to retain.

sostenére, to sustain.

trattenére, to entertain, keep

waiting.

11. **Volére**, to wish, **volutò**; **vòlli or vòlsi**, **vorrò**.

Present Indicative.

vòglio vogliamo

vuòi volete

vuòle vògliono

Imperative.

vògli vogliate

Present Subjunctive

vòglia vogliamo

“ **vogliate**

vògliano

Like **volére**:

disvolére (svolére) not to wish, to refuse.

rivolére, to wish again, to have a mind to do again.

III.

Preterites in **-si**:

12. **Calére**, to matter, make a difference, **caluto**, **calse**. Impersonal. Imperative, present participle, future and conditional lacking.¹

Present Indicative.

cale

Present Subjunctive.

cáglia

¹ Moise gives **carrà** (**calerà**) and **carrèbbe** (**calerèbbe**), but they are not in use. **Caluto** is also almost never used.

13. **Dolére**, to grieve, hurt, **doluto**; **dòlsi**, **dorrò**.

Present Indicative.		Present Subjunctive	
dòlgo (dòglio)	dogliamo	dòlga (dòglia)	dogliamo (dolghiamo)
duqli	dolète	“	“ dogliate
duqle	dòlgono (dògliono)	“	“ dòlgano (dògliano)

Like **dolére**:

condolére, to condole. **ridolére**, to grieve again.

14. **Persuadére**, to persuade, **persuaso**; **persuasi**.

Regular except in the preterite and past participle.

Like **persuadére**:

dissuadére, to dissuade.

15. **Rimanére**, to remain, **rimasto** (*or* **rimaso**); **rimasi**, **rimarrò**.

Present Indicative.		Present Subjunctive.	
rimango	rimaniamo (riman- ghiamo)	rimanga	rimaniamo (rimanghi- amo)
rimani	rimanète	rimanga	rimaniate
rimane	rimángo	“	rimángo

Like **rimanére**:

permanére, to remain.

16. **Valére**, to be worth, **valuto** (**valso**); **valsi**, **varrò**.

Present Indicative.		Present Subjunctive.	
valgo (váglio)	vogliamo (val- ghiamo)	valga (vaglia)	vogliamo (valghi- amo)
vali	valète	“	“ vagliate
vale	válgono (váglione)	“	“ válgano (vágliano)

Like **valére**:

equivalére, to be equivalent,
of the same worth.

prevalére, to prevail.

invalidére, to become valid.

rivalére, to recover, avail
one's self again.

IV.

Preterite in **-vi**:

17. **Parére**, to seem, appear, **paruto** *or* **parso**; **parvi**, **parrò**.

Present Indicative.		Present Subjunctive.	
páio	paiamo <i>or</i> pariamo	páia	paiamo <i>or</i> pariamo
pari	parète	páiate	
pare	páiono	páiano	

V.

Preterite in *-cqui*¹:

18. **Giacére**, to lie, **giaciuto**; **giacqui**, **giacerò**.

Present Indicative.

giaccio **giacciamo**

giaci **giacete**

giace **giacciono**

Present Subjunctive.

giaccia **giacciamo**

“ **giacciate**

“ **giacciano**

Like **giacére**:

piacére, to please.

tacére, to be silent.

VI.

Solére and **vedére** are somewhat different from any of the other irregular verbs of this conjugation:

19. **Solére**, to be in the habit of, **sólito**,² has no imperative, preterite, future, nor conditional.

Present Indicative.

sóglio **sogliamo**

suóli **solete**

suóle **sógliono**

Present Subjunctive.

sógli **sogliamo**

“ **sogliate**

“ **sógliono**

Imperfect Subjunctive.

solessi, etc.

20. **Vedére**, to see, **veduto** *or* **visto**; **vidi** (**vèddi**), **vedrò**.

Present Indicative.

vedo (**vèggo**, **vèggio**)

vèdi³

vède

Present Subjunctive.

vediamo (**veggiamo**)

vedete

vèdono (**vèggono**, **vèggiono**)

Like **vedére**:

antivedére,⁴ to foresee.

avvedérsi, to perceive, remark.

divedére,⁵ to convince.

prevedére, to foresee.

provvedére,⁶ to provide.

ravvedére, to improve, reform. [again.]

rivedére, to see, examine

travedére, to see indistinctly.

(*Exercises XLIV and XLV.*)

¹ Cf. Class (b), **náscere**, 114, p. 190.

² Used only as an adjective. Ex.: **era sólito**, “I was accustomed.”

³ Sometimes shortened into **vè'** in familiar conversation. The imperative singular may also become **vè'**.

⁴ Past participle only **anteveduto**.

⁵ Only the infinitive is used.

⁶ Future and conditional **provvedero**, **provvederei**.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



29. **Chiúdere**, to close, **chiuso**; **chiusi**.

Like **chiúdere**:

acclúdere, to enclose.

inclúdere, to include.

conclúdere, to conclude.

preclúdere, to preclude.

esclúdere, to exclude.

30. **Collídere**, to collide, **colliso**; **collisi**. Rare.

31. **Conquúdere**, to conquer, **conquiso**; **conquisi**. Rare.

32. **Contúdere**, to bruise, **contuso**; **contusi**.

33. **Córrere**, to run, **corso**; **corsi**.

Like **córrere**:

accórrere, to run in haste.

percórrere, to pass rapidly,
run through.

concórrere, to flock, to com-
pete.

ricórrere, to have recourse to.

discórrere, to discourse.

soccórrere, to succor.

incórrere, to incur.

scórrere, to pass away.

occórrere, to happen.

trascórrere, to run over.

34. **Decídere**, to decide, **deciso**; **decisi**.

Like **decídere**:

circoncídere, to cut round.

precídere, to cut off.

coincídere,¹ to coincide.

recídere, to cut.

incídere, to cut into.

35. **Diféndere**, to defend, **difeso**; **difesi**.

Like **diféndere**:

offéndere, to offend.

36. **Divídere**, to divide, **diviso**; **divisi**.

37. **Elídere**, to elide, **eliso**; **elisi** or **elidei**.

38. **Espéllere**, to expel, **espulso**; **espulsi**.

Like **espéllere**:

compéllere, to compel.²

repéllere, to repel.

impéllere, to impel.

39. **Esplódere**, to explode, **esploso**; **esplosi**.

¹ Also regular.

² Rare.

40. **Evádere**, to evade, **evaso**; **evasi**.

Like **evádere**:

invádere, to invade.

41. **Fóndere**, to melt, **fuso** (**fonduto**); **fusi** (**fondei**).

Like **fóndere**:

confóndere,¹ to confound.

42. **Immérgere**, to immerse, **immerso**; **immersi**.

Like **immérgere**:

mérgere,² to plunge.

43. **Intrídere**, to dilute, **intriso** (**intrito**); **intrisi**.

44. **Intrúdere**, to intrude, **intruso**; **intrusi**.

45. **Lédere**, to hurt, offend, **lëso**; **lësi**. Rare.

46. **Mólcere**, to soothe. Pret. **mulse**. Defective. Rare.

47. **Mórdere**, to bite, **morso**; **morsi**.

Like **mórdere**:

rimórdere, to grieve.

48. **Pérdere**, to lose, **perso** (oftener **perduto**); **persi** (oftener **perdei** or **perdetti**).

49. **Préndere**, to take, **preso**; **presi**.

Like **préndere**:

appréndere, to learn.

ripréndere, to retake.

compréndere, to comprehend.

sopréndere, to surprise.

50. **Rádere**, to shave, **raso**; **rasi**.

Like **rádere**:

sorrádere, to graze.

51. **Réndere**, to render, **reso** (**renduto**); **resi** (**rendei**, **rendetti**).

Like **réndere**:

arréndere, to yield, surrender.

¹ Which does not have the weak forms exhibited by its primitive.

² This, the primitive, is rarely used.

52. **Rídere**, to laugh, **riso**; **risi**.

Like **rídere**:

arrídere, to smile upon, to favor.

sorrídere, to smile.

53. **Ródere**, to gnaw, **roso**; **rosi**.

Like **ródere**:

corródere, to corrode.

54. **Scéndere** (**discéndere**¹), to descend, **sceso**; **scesi**.

Like **scéndere**:

ascéndere, to ascend.

55. **Spárgere**, to strew, **sparso** (**sparto**, poetical); **sparsi**.

Like **spárgere**:

cospargere, to sprinkle.

56. **Spéndere**, to spend, **speso**; **spesi**.

57. **Spérgere**, to scatter, **sperso**; **spersi**. Rare.

Like **spérgere**:

aspérgere,
cospérgere, } to sprinkle.

dispérgere, to disperse.

58. **Téndere**, to extend, **teso**; **tesi**.²

Like **téndere**:

atténdere, to attend, wait.

osténdere, to show.

conténdere, to contest.

sténdere (**disténdere**), to extend.

inténdere, to understand.

59. **Térgere**, to wipe, **terso**; **tersi**. Rare.

Like **térgere**:

astérgere, to absterge. Rare.

60. **Uccídere**, to kill, **ucciso**; **uccisi**.

Like **uccídere**:

ancídere, to kill. Rare.

¹ **Discéndere** is the older form of **scéndere**.

² This is the transitive verb; the intransitive is regular, but has no past participle.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership
provides unlimited
access to more than
28,000 volumes of
Christian literature for
\$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

65. **Discútere**, to discuss, **discusso**; **discussi**.

Like **discútere**:

concútere, to shake. Only past participle **concusso** used.

incútere, to inspire, infuse.

66. **Féndere**, to split, **fenduto** or **fesso**; **fendei** (**fendetti** or **fessi**).

67. **Fíggere** (**figere**), to fix, **fisso** or **fitto**; **fissi** (**fisi**).

Like **fíggere**:

solfíggere, to hunt, hide one's self.

68. **Fléttere**, to bend, **flesso**; **flessi**.

Like **fléttere**:

genufléttere, to kneel. Rare.

rifléttere, to reflect. Also **reflettuto** and **riflettei**.¹

69. **Inflúere**, to influence, **influsso**; **influssi**.²

70. **Móvere** (**muovere**), to move, **movendo**, **mosso**; **mossi**.³

Like **m(u)overe**:

comm(u)overe, to affect.

rim(u)overe, to remove.

prom(u)overe, to promote.

somm(u)overe, to stir up.

71. **Scindere**, to sever, **scisso**; **scindei** or **scissi**.

72. **Scótere** (**scuótere**), to shake, **scosso**; **scossi**.

Like **sc(u)ótere**:

perc(u)ótere, to strike.

risc(u)ótere, to shake (up).

73. **Súggere**, to suck. No past participle. Preterite **sussi** or **suggei**. Rare.

Present Indicative.

suggo

suggi, etc.

Present Subjunctive.

sugga, etc.

IV.

Past participle in **-to**, preterite in **-si**:

74. **Accórgere** (**accórgersi**), to perceive, **accorto**; **accorsi**.

Like **accórgere**:

scórgere, to perceive.

¹ **Rifléttere** is usually weak when it means "to meditate", strong when it means "to reflect light". Cf. 263.

² **Influire**, a regular verb of the third conjugation, is oftener used.

³ Cf. 70 (3).

75. **Assólvere**, to absolve, *assolto or assoluto*; *assolvei, assolvetti or assolsi*.¹

Like **assólvere**:

risólvere, to melt, dissolve.

76. **Assórbere**, to absorb, *assorto*; *assorsi*. Rare.

77. **Assúmere**, to assume, *assunto*; *assunsi*.

Like **assúmere**:

consúmere, to consume.

presúmere, to presume.

78. **Cíngere (cígnere)**, to gird, *cinto*; *cinsi, cingerò (cignerò)*.

Present Indicative.

cingo (cigno)	cingiamo (cigniamo)	cinga (cigno)	cingiamo (cigniamo)
cingi (cigni)	cingete (cignete)	“	“ cingiate (cigniate)
cinge (cigne)	cíngono (cígnono)	“	“ cíngano (cígnano)

Present Subjunctive.

Imperative.

cingi (cigni) cingete (cignete)

Like **cíngere**:

giúngere (giúgnere), to arrive, *giunto*; *giunsi*.

raggiúngere, to rejoice.

múgnere (múngere), to milk, *munto*; *munsi*.

piángere (piágnere), to weep, *pianto*; *piansi*.

compiángere, to bewail.

rimpiángere, to regret.

píngere (pígnere), to paint.

dipíngere (dipígnere), to paint.

púngere (púgnere), to prick, *punto*; *punsi*.

spégnere (spéngere),² to extinguish, *spento*; *spensi*.

spíngere (spígnere), to push.

stríngere (strígnere), to brush, *strètto or strinto*; *strinsi*.³

tíngere (tígnere), to dye.

úgnere (úngere), to anoint, *unto*; *unsi*.

¹ The strong forms are poetical. For **risólvere**, “to determine”, cf. **sólvere**, 122, p. 191.

² The forms with **gn** are, however, quite as common as those with **ng**.

³ This differs from **cíngere** only in having the past participle *strètto*.

79. **Cogliere** (**corre**), to gather, **cogliendo**, **colto**, **colsi**, **coglierò** (**corrò**).

Present Indicative.

cólgo (**cóglio**) **cogliamo** (**colghiamo**)
cogli **cogliete**
coglie **cólgono** (**cógliono**)

Present Subjunctive.

cólga (**cógli**) **cogliamo** (**colghi-**
cogliate [amo)
cólgano (**cógliano**)

Imperative like present indicative.

Like **cogliere**:

accogliere, to receive, welcome.

prosciogliere, to absolve.

raccogliere, to collect.

sciogliere (**sciorre**, **asciogliere**, **disciogliere**), to untie.

Also with change of vowel (e for o throughout):

prescogliere, to choose before, select with care.

scogliere (**scerre**), to choose.

trascogliere, to select.

And

stogliere (**storre**, **distogliere**)¹, to dissolve, divert from.

togliere (**torre**), to take, take away.

80. **Cólere**, to revere, **colto** or **culto**. Defective. Only present indicative **cóllo** and **cóle** in use. Rare.

81. **Distínguere**, to distinguish, **distinto**; **distinsi**.

Like **distínguere**:

estínguere, to extinguish.

82. **Èrgere**, to erect, **erto**; **ersi**. Rare.

83. **Fíngere**, to feign, **finto**; **finsi**.

84. **Frángere** (**frágnere**), to break, **franto**; **fransi**.

Like **frángere**:

infrángere, to crush, infringe.

85. **Fúlgere**, to shine. No present participle. Preterite **fulsi**. Rare.

Like **fúlgere**:

rifúlgere, to shine. Also rare, defective, and poetical.

¹ Here, as always, the present participle is formed from the uncontracted infinitive: **scegliendo**, **togliendo**, etc.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



95. **Vólgere** *or* **vólvere**, to turn, **vólto**; **vólsi**.

Like **vólgere**:

avvólgere (avvólvere), to wrap.	invólgere , to wrap up.
devólvere , to devolve (past participle devoluto).	rivólgere , to turn, revolve.
	sconvólgere , to overturn.
	svólgere , to unfold.

V.

Past participle in **-tto**, preterite in **-ssi**:

96. **Afflígere**, to afflict, **afflitto**; **afflissi**.

97. **Condurre**, to conduct, **conducendo**, **condotto**; **condussi**.

Like **condurre**:

addurre , to bring, allege.	introdurre , to introduce.
dedurre , to deduct (dedotto <i>or</i> dedutto).	produrre , to produce.
dúcere ¹ , to conduct.	ridurre , to reduce.
indurre , to induce.	sedurre , to seduce.
	tradurre , to translate.

98. **Corréggere**, to correct, **corretto**; **corressi**.

Like **corréggere**:

dirígere , to direct.	réggere ² , to govern.
erígere , to erect.	

99. **Cócere** (**cuócere**), to cook, **cocendo**, **cotto**; **cossi**.³

100. **Fríggere**, to fry, **fritto**; **frissi**.

101. **Léggere**, to read, **letto**; **lessi**.⁴

Like **léggere**:

eléggere, to elect.

predilígere, to have a partiality for.

102. **Lúcere**, to shine. Defective. No past participle. Preterite **luisse**. Rare.

Like **lúcere**:

rilúcere, to shine. Pret. **rilussi** *or* **rilucei**.

¹ This, the primitive, is used only in poetry. The infinitive is not often contracted into **durre**. **Dutto**, "duct", is etymologically its past participle.

² The primitive, but much less used than **corréggere**.

³ Cf. 70 (3).

⁴ Cf. 70.

103. **Neglígere**, to neglect, **neglètto**; **neglèssi**.

104. **Protéggere**, to protect, **protètto**; **protèssi**.

105. **Scrívère**, to write, **scritto**; **scrissi**.

Like **scrívère**:

ascrívère, to ascribe. [scribe.

circoscrívère, to circum-

descrívère, to describe.

inscrívère, to inscribe.

prescrívère, to prescribe.

proscrívère, to proscribe.

sottoscrívère, to subscribe.

trascrívère, to transcribe.

106. **Strúggere** (**distrúggere**), to destroy, dissolve, **strutto**; **strussi**.

107. **Trarre** (**tráere**), to draw, **traendo**, **tratto**; **trassi**, **trarrò**.

Like **trarre**:

attrarre, to attract.

contrarre, to contract.

detrarre, to detract.

distrarre, to divert from.

estrarre, to extract.

protrarre, to protract.

ritrarre, to draw back.

sottrarre, to subtract.

VI.

Past participle in **-sto**, in **-si**:

108. **Chiédere**, to ask, **chièsto**; **chièsi** or **chiedèi**.

Like **chiédere**:

inchiédere, to inquire.

richiédere, to request.

109. **Nascóndere**, to hide, **nascósto**; **nascósi**.

Like **nascóndere**:

ascóndere¹, to hide.

110. **Porre** (**pónere**)², to put, **ponendo**, **posto**; **posi**.

Present Indicative.

pòngo	poniamo
pòni	ponete
pòne	póngono

Present Subjunctive.

pònga	poniamo
“	poniate
“	póngano

¹ The primitive, but less used than **nascóndere**.

² This, the uncontracted form, is still used.

Like **porre**:

anteporre , to prefer.	intraporre , to interpose.
apporre (appónere), to affix, impute.	opporre , to oppose.
disporre , to dispose.	posporre , to postpone.
esporre (espónere , sporre), to expound.	preporre , to prefer.
imporre , to impose.	riporre , to replace.
	sopporre , to place under.
	supporre , to suppose.

111. **Rispondere**, to respond, **risposto**; **risposi**.

Like **rispondere**:

corrispondere, to correspond.

VII.

Verbs showing reduplication in the preterite.

(a) Preterite in **-bbi**, past participle regular:

112. **Conoscere**, to know (by the senses), **conosciuto**;
conobbi.

Like **conoscere**:

riconoscere, to recognize.

sconoscere (**disconoscere**), not to know.

113. **Crêscere**, to grow, **cresciuto**; **crebbi**.

Like **crêscere**:

accrêscere, to increase.

decrêscere, to decrease.

incrêscere,
rincrêscere¹, } to be sorry.

(b) Past participle regular or in **-to**, preterite in **-cqui**²:

114. **Nâscere**, to be born, **nato**; **nacqui**.

Present Indicative.

nasco

nasci, etc.

Present Subjunctive.

nasca, etc.

Preterite.

nacqui

nacesti, etc.

115. **Nocere** (**nuocere**), to harm, **nociuto**; **nocqui**.

Present Indicative.

nuoco or **nuocio** **nociamo**

nuoci **nocete** [**ciono**

nuoce **nuocono** or **noc-**

Present Subjunctive.

nuoca or **nuoccia** **nociamo**

“ “ “ **nociate** [**ciano**

“ “ “ **nuocano** or **noc-**

(c) Past participle in **-tto**, preterite in **-ppi**:

¹ Impersonal.

² Cf. **giacere**, 18, p. 178.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books' Full Membership provides unlimited access to more than 28,000 volumes of Christian literature for \$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

IX.

123. **Vivere**, to live, **vissuto** (**vivuto**), **vissi**, **viverò** *or* **vivrò**.

Like **vivere**:

convivere, to live together, eat or drink together.

rivivere, to revive.

IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.¹

I.

(a) Verbs irregular in the present tenses but having the regular weak preterite:

124. **Cucire**, to sew, **cucito**, **cucii**.

Present indicative **cúcio** *or* **cucisco**, etc. Present subjunctive **cúcia** *or* **cucisca**, etc. (This verb inserts **i** before **a** and **o**, but not before **e** and **i**.)

Like **cucire**:

sdrucire (**sdruscire**) *or* **scucire**, to rip.

125. **Empire** *or* **émpiere**, to fill, **empiendo**, **empito**, **empii**.

Present Indicative.

émpio (**empisco**) **empiamo**

émpi (**empisci**) **empite**

émpie (**empisce**) **émpiono** (**empíscono**)

Present Subjunctive.

émpia **empiamo**

“ **empiate**

“ **émpiano**

These irregular forms are from **émpiere**.

Like **empire**:

adempire (**adémpiere**), to accomplish. (This verb has also the past participle **adempiuto**.)

compire (**cómpiere**), to perfect. (Past participle **compiuto**. **Cómpito** is used as an adjective.)

¹ For verbs which do not show, or do not always show, the **-isco** forms see 71.

126. **Salire**, to ascend, **salito**, **salii** *or* **salsi**.

Present Indicative.	
salgo (salisco)	saliamo (sagliamo, salghiamo)
sali (salisci)	salite
sale (salisce)	sálgono (salíscono)

Present Subjunctive.	
salga (salisca)	saliamo (sagliamo, salghiamo)
“ “	sagliate
sale (salisce)	sálgano (salíscono)

Like **salire**:

assalire, to assail.

risalire, to reascend.

127. **Seguire**, to follow, **seguito**, **seguii**.

The stem **e** may diphthong under the accent: **séguo** or **siéguo**, etc.

128. **Udire**, to hear, **udito**, **udii**, **udirò**, *or* **udrò**.

Present Indicative.	Present Subjunctive.
òdo udiamo	òda udiamo
òdi udite	“ udiate
òde ódono	“ ódano

129. **Uscire** (**escire**), to go out, **uscito**, **uscii**.

Present Indicative.	Present Subjunctive.
esco usciamo	esca usciamo
esci uscite	“ usciate
esci éscono	“ éscano

Like **uscire**:

riuscire, to succeed, to turn out.

(b) Verbs irregular in the present and preterite:

130. **Sparire**, to disappear, **sparito**, **sparii** *or* **sparvi**.

Present Indicative.		Present Subjunctive.	
spáio <i>or</i> sparisco	spariamo	spáia <i>or</i> sparisca	spariamo
spari <i>or</i> sparisci	sparite [riscono	“ “ “	spariate [cano
spare <i>or</i> sparisce	spáiono <i>or</i> spa-	“ “ “	spáiano <i>or</i> sparis-

Like **sparire**:

apparire, to appear, **apparito**
or **apparso**, **apparvi**, **ap-**
parsi, **apparì**.

comparire, to appear, **com-**
parso *or* **comparito**, **com-**
parsi, **comparvi**, **comparii**.

131. **Venire**, to come, **venuto**, **venni**, **verrò**.

Present Indicative.		Present Subjunctive.	
vengo (vengo)	veniamo (venghiamo)	venga (vengna)	veniamo (venghiamo)
vieni	venite	“	veniate
viene	vengono (vengnono)	“	vengano (vengnano)

Like **venire**:**avvenire**, to happen.**convenire**, to agree. [come.]**divenire** (**devenire**), to be-**intervenire**, to intervene.**invenire**, to find out.**prevenire**, to hinder.**provenire** (**provvenire**), to proceed from.**sovvenire**, to relieve.**svenire**, to faint.

(c) Verbs irregular in the present and past participle, or present, past participle, and preterite:

132. **Morire**, to die, **morto**; **mori**, **morrò** or **morirò**.

Present Indicative.		Present Subjunctive.	
muoio (muoro) ¹	moriamo or muoiamo	muoia (muora)	moriamo or muoiamo
muori or muoi	morite	“	muoiate
muore	muoiono (muorono)	“	muoiano (muorano)

133. **Dire**, to say, **dice**, **detto**; **dissi**, **dirò**.

Present Indicative.		Imperative.	Present Subjunctive.	
dico	diciamo		dica	diciamo
dici	dite	di' dite	“	diciate
dice	dicono		“	dicano

Like **dire**:**addire**, to assign.**benedire** (**benedicere**), to bless.**disdire** (**sdire**), to deny.**indire**, to announce.**maledire**, to curse.**predire**, to predict.**ridire**,² to repeat.

¹ In all forms where the diphthong **uo** occurs **o** is sometimes found replacing it.

² **Redire**, “to return”, (poetical,) has nothing to do with **dire**. Cf. 153, p. 196.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



145. **Compétere**, to compete. No past participle. Otherwise regular.

146. **Convérgere**, to converge. No past participle. Otherwise regular.

147. **Delínquere**, to be delinquent. No past participle. Otherwise regular. Poetical.

148. **Divérgere**, to diverge. No past participle. Otherwise regular.

149. **Estóllere**, to extol. Only **estolle** found.

150. **Férvere**, to be hot. No past participle. Used only in the third person.

151. **Fiédere**, to wound. No past participle. Otherwise regular. Poetical. Rare.

152. **Gire**, to go, **gito**.

Present Indicative.	Imperfect.	Imperative.	Present Subjunctive.
giamo	giva (gia), etc.		giamo
gite		gite	giate
Future and conditional		girò, girèi, etc.,	regular.

Poetical.

153. **Ire**, to go, **ito**.

Present Indicative.	Imperfect.	Imperative.	Imperfect Subjunctive
	iva ivamo		
ite	ivi	ite	iste
	iva		isse íssero
Preterite Indicative.			Future.
	isti iste		iremo
			irete
			iranno

Like **ire**:

redire, to return.

154. **Illanguidire**, to grow faint. No past participle. Otherwise regular.

155. **Lambire**, to lick. No past participle. Used only in the third person.

156. **Lécere (lícere)**, to be lawful, **lécito (licito)**.

Present Indicative
lece (lice)

No other arts found. Poetical.

157. **Olire**, to smell. Only imperfect indicative *oliva* and *olívano* used.

158. **Perire**, to perish. No present participle. Otherwise regular.

159. **Prúdere**, to itch. No past participle. Used only in the third person.

160. **Riédere**, to return.

Present Indicative.

Present Subjunctive.

riędo

riędi

rięde

riędono

rięda

riędano (Poet.)

161. **Strídere**, to shriek. No past participle. Otherwise regular.

162. **Tángere**, to touch. Has only *tange*.

163. **Úrgere**, to urge. Has only *urge*, *uręeva*, *uręesse*.

164. **Vęrttere**, to turn. Regular, but used only in the indicative present and imperfect.

Like *vęrttere*:

controvęrttere, to controvert.

165. **Vígere**, to be in force, to flourish. No past participle. Used only in the third person.

INDEX OF IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE VERBS.

Verbs conjugated in the same manner as some other verb are in this index set in from the margin. The commoner compound verbs are so placed. Rare compounds, obsolete and very unusual verbs, are not included here.

- | | |
|---------------------------|--------------------|
| Accadére, 8 | Arrógere, 26 |
| Accéndere, 21 | Ascéndere, 54 |
| Acclúdere, 29 | Asciogliere, 79 |
| Accógliere, 79 | Asciolvere, 88 |
| Accórgere, 74 | Ascóndere, 109 |
| Accórrere, 33 | Ascrívere, 105 |
| Accrés cere, 113 | Aspérgere, 57 |
| Acquisire, 143 | Assalire, 126 |
| Addire, 133 | Assídere, 27 |
| Addurre, 97 | Assístere, 119 |
| Adémpiere (adempire), 125 | Assólvere, 75 |
| Affarsi, 3 | Assórbere, 76 |
| Affíggere, 96 | Assuefarsi, 3 |
| Álgere, 22 | Assúmere, 77 |
| Allúdere, 23 | Astérgere, 59 |
| Amméttere, 61 | Atténdere, 58 |
| Ancídere, 60 | Attenérsi, 10 |
| Andare, 1 | Attórcere, 93 |
| Annéttere, 62 | Attrarre, 107 |
| Anteporre, 110 | Avéllere, 28 |
| Antivedére, 20 | Avére, cf. § 74 |
| Apparire, 130 | Avvedérsi, 20 |
| Appartenére, 10 | Avvenire, 133 |
| Appéndere, 24 | Avvíncere, 94 |
| Apporre, 110 | Avvólgere, 95 |
| Appréndere, 49 | |
| Aprire, 134 | Benedire, 133 |
| Árdere, 25 | Bere (bévere), 117 |
| Arréndere, 51 | |
| Arrídere, 52 | Cadére, 8 |



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books' Full Membership provides unlimited access to more than 28,000 volumes of Christian literature for \$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

- Disdire, 133
 Disfare, 3
 Dismettere (smettere), 61
 Dispérgere, 57
 Disporre, 110
 Disròmpere, 116
 Dissólvere, 122
 Dissuadére, 14
 Distare, 4
 Disténdere, 58
 Distínguere, 81
 Distógliere (distorre), 79
 Distórcere, 93
 Distrarre, 107
 Distrúggere, 106
 Disvellere (svellere), 92
 Divedére, 20
 Divégliere (divellere) (diver-
 verre), 92
 Divenire, 131
 Divérgere, 148
 Divídere, 36
 Dolére, 13
 Dovére, 5
 Dúcere, 97

 Eléggere, 101
 Elídere, 37
 Elúdere, 23
 Equivalére, 16
 Érgere, 82
 Erígere, 98
 Eròmpere, 116
 Esaurire, 139
 Escire (uscire), 130
 Esclúdere, 29
 Esígere, 121
 Esístere, 120
 Espéllere, 38
 Esplódere, 39
 Esporre, 110
 Esprímere, 64

 Éssere, § 74
 Estínguere, 81
 Estóllere (estógliere), 149
 Estrarre, 107
 Evádere, 40

 Fare, 3
 Féndere, 66
 Férvere, 150
 Fiédere, 151
 Fíggere (figere), 67
 Fíngere, 83
 Fléttere, 68
 Fóndere, 41
 Frammettere, 61
 Frángere, 84
 Fríggere, 100
 Fúlgere, 85

 Genufléttere, 68
 Giacére, 18
 Gire, 152
 Giúngere (giúgnere), 78

 Illanguidire, 154
 Illúdere, 23
 Immérgere, 42
 Impéllere, 38
 Impéndere, 24
 Imporre, 110
 Imprímere, 64
 Inchiédere, 108
 Incídere, 34
 Inclúdere, 29
 Incórrere, 33
 Incréscere, 113
 Incútere, 65
 Indire, 133
 Indurre, 97
 Infiúere, 69
 Infrángere, 84
 Insístere, 119

- Inscrivere (iscrivere), 105
 Instruire, 137
 Intendere, 58
 Intercedere, 63
 Interrompere, 116
 Intervenire, 131
 Intraporre, 110
 Intrattenere, 10
Intrudere, 43
 Introdurre, 97
Intrudere, 44
 Invadere, 40
 Invalere, 16
 Invenire, 131
 Involgere, 95
Ire, 153
 Irrompere, 116

Lambire, 155
Lecere, 156
Ledere, 45
Leggere, 101
 Liquefare, 3
Lucere, 102
 Ludere, 23

 Maledire, 133
 Malfare, 3
 Manomettere, 61
 Mansuefare, 3
 Mantenere, 10
 Mergere, 42
Mettere, 61
Molcere, 46
Mordere, 47
Morire, 132
Movere (muovere), 70
 Mungere (mugnere), 78

Nascere, 114
Nascondere, 109
Negligere, 103
- Nocere (nuocere), 116

 Occorrere, 33
 Offendere, 35
Offerire (offrire), 140
Olire, 157
 Opporre, 110
 Opprimere, 64
Orire, 141
 Ostendere, 58
 Ottenere, 10

Parere, 17
Percipere, 120
 Percorrere, 33
 Percotere (percuotere), 72
Perdere, 48
Perire, 158
 Permanere, 15
 Permettere, 61
 Persistere, 119
Persuadere, 14
 Piacere, 18
 Piangere (piagnere), 78
 Pingere (pignere), 78
Piovvere, 119
Porgere, 86
Porre (ponere), 110
 Posporre, 110
 Possedere, 7
Potere, 6
 Precidere, 34
 Precludere, 29
 Prediligere, 101
 Predire, 133
 Premettere, 61
Préndere, 49
 Preporre, 110
 Presciogliere, 79
 Prescrivere, 105
 Presumere, 77
 Prevalere, 16

- Prevedére, 20
 Prevenire, 131
 Produrre, 97
 Promettere, 61
 Promóvere (promuóvere), 70
 Prorómpere, 116
 Prosciógliere, 79
 Proscrivere, 105
 Protéggere, 104
 Protrarre, 107
 Provenire (provvenire), 131
 Provvedére, 20
 Prúdere, 159
 Púngere (púgnere), 78

 Raccógliere, 79
 Rádere, 50
 Raggiúngere, 78
 Rattenére, 10
 Ravvédere, 20
 Recídere, 34
 Redímere, 87
 Redire, 153
 Réggere, 98
 Réndere, 51
 Repéllere, 38
 Reprímere, 64
 Resístere, 119
 Riaccéndere, 21
 Riandare, 1
 Ricadére, 8
 Richiédere, 108
 Riconóscere, 112
 Ricórrere, 33
 Ridare, 2
 Rídere, 52
 Ridire, 133
 Ridolére, 13
 Ridurre, 97
 Riédere, 160
 Rifare, 3
 Rifléttere, 68
 Rifúlgere, 85
 Rilúcere, 102
 Rimanére, 15
 Rimettere, 61
 Rimórdere, 47
 Rimpiángere, 78
 Rimóvere (rimuóvere), 70
 Rincreóscere, 113
 Ripréndere, 49
 Riporre, 110
 Risalire, 126
 Riscuótere, 72
 Risedére, 7
 Risólvere, 75 and 126
 Risórgere, 90
 Rispondere, 111
 Ristare, 4
 Ritenére, 10
 Ritórcere, 93
 Ritrarre, 107
 Riuscire, 129
 Rivalére, 16
 Rivedére, 20
 Rivenire, 137
 Rivívere, 123
 Rivolére, 11
 Rivólgere, 95
 Ródere, 53
 Rómpere, 117

 Salire, 126
 Sapére, 9
 Scadére, 8
 Scégliere (scerre), 79
 Scéndere, 54
 Scíndere, 71
 Sciógliere (sciorre), 79
 Sciólvere, 88
 Scommettere, 61
 Sconóscere, 112
 Sconvólgere, 95
 Scoprire, 137



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

Úgnere (úngere), 78
Úrgere, 163
Uscire, 129

Valére, 16
Vedére, 20
Véllere (vèrre), 92
Venire, 132

Vértere, 164
Vígere, 165
Vilipéndere, 24
Víncere, 94
Vívere, 124
Volére, 11
Vólgere (vólvere), 95

EXERCISES.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership
provides unlimited
access to more than
28,000 volumes of
Christian literature for
\$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

VOCABULARY

il ragazzo , the boy, pl. i ragazzi	piccolo , small, piccoli ; piccola ,
la ragazza , the girl, pl. le ragazze	piccole
lo scolare , the pupil, pl. gli scolari (fem. la scolare , le scolari)	quanto , how much, pl. quanti , how many (fem. quanta , quante)
il signore , the gentleman (signor, sir, Mr.), pl. i signori	ecco , here is, here are (literally e , and ["'behold'"])
la signora , the lady, pl. le signore	due , two
l'uomo , the man, pl. gli uomini	non , no, not
inglese , English, pl. inglesi (fem. the same, cf. 109)	sì , yes
	essere , to be; avere , to have

io sono , I am	io ho , I have
tu sei , thou art	tu hai , thou hast
egli è , he is	egli ha , he has
noi siamo , we are	noi abbiamo , we have
voi siete , ye (you) are	voi avete , ye (you) have
essi sono , they are	essi hanno , they have

INTERROGATIVE.

sono io? ¹	ho io? , etc.
sei tu? , etc.	

NEGATIVE.

io non sono	io non ho , etc.
tu non sei , etc.	

Remarks. (1) The pronouns are usually not expressed.²

Sono. I am.

Ha. He has.

Non hanno i libri? Haven't they the books?

(2) The second person singular of these and all verbs (**tu**) is used in addressing a near relative, an intimate friend, or a child, its plural, **voi**, in addressing two or more relatives, friends, or children, but this usage of **voi** is in the south of Italy often extended even to strangers. **Tu** and **voi** are also much used in poetry, but the ordinary form of address is the feminine 3d sing.⁴, **Ella** or **Lei è**, **Lei ha**,³ etc.

¹ Cf. 72.

² For fuller explanations see 87 and 88.

³ Cf. 91. ⁴ Only the third person singular will be used in the first exercises, the other forms being introduced later.

EXERCISE II.

Ècco un ragazzo. Il ragazzo ha un libro. È un libro italiano?¹
Sì, è un libro italiano. Ècco una ragazza. Ha due libri. Sono
libri italiani? No, non sono italiani, sono inglesi. La ragazza è
Americana,¹ il ragazzo è Italiano. La ragazza americana²
ha libri inglesi, il ragazzo italiano ha libri italiani. Il ragazzo
è uno scolare. Il ragazzo e la ragazza sono scolari. Gli scolari
hanno libri. L'uomo ha un libro, è uno scolare? No, non è uno
scolare. Ècco lo scolare. Ècco due scolari. Gli scolari hanno
libri italiani. Gl' Italiani sono scolari. È scolare Lei?
Sì, sono uno scolare, e ho un libro. Lo scolare italiano è piccolo.
È piccola la ragazza americana? Sì, è piccola. Quanti libri ha
Lei, signor professore? Ho due libri. Gli uomini hanno libri.

¹ For the capitalization see 37.

² Note the position of the 'adjective.

EXERCISE III.

(1) Here is a book. (2) Here are two books. (3) They¹ are English books. (4) The American boy has two Italian books. (5) He is a pupil. (6) Is the man a pupil? (7) Yes, he is a pupil and he has a book. (8) Is the girl a pupil? (9) Yes, she is a² pupil. (10) She has two Italian books. (11) The boy and the girl are pupils. (12) The pupils have English books. (13) Have you books? (14) Yes, I have two Italian books. (15) I am a pupil. (16) The men are not pupils. (17) The men have no³ books. (18) Yes, they¹ have Italian books. (19) Are the men Italians? (20) Yes, they¹ are Italians. (21) Have the Italians English books? (22) They¹ have Italian books and English books.

NOTE.—The pupil should in writing use only accents, etc., commonly employed in Italian, not the diacritical signs used in this book to indicate the pronunciation.

¹ Omit.

² Una-scolare—taking the logical gender.

³ In translating arrange words in order as numbered.

VOCABULARY.

NOTE.—Before beginning Exercise IV the pupil should learn the present indicative of the model verb of the first conjugation, *mostrare*, “to show, point” (68).

Like <i>mostrare</i> :	change its form either in fem. or in pl.)
<i>salutare</i> , to salute, say good-morning to	<i>dęstro</i> , right, <i>dęstri</i> ; fem. <i>dęstra</i> , <i>dęstre</i>
<i>dimorare</i> , to live, dwell	<i>altro</i> , other, <i>altri</i> ; fem. <i>altra</i> , <i>altre</i>
<i>amare</i> , to like, love	<i>morto</i> , dead, <i>morti</i> ; fem. <i>morta</i> , <i>morte</i>
<i>guardare</i> , to look at	<i>molto</i> , much, very much, <i>molti</i> , many; fem. <i>molta</i> , <i>molte</i>
<i>il giorno</i> , the day	<i>bęl</i> , ¹ <i>bęllo</i> , beautiful; fem. <i>bęlla</i> , <i>terzo</i> , third [bęlle
<i>buono</i> , good	<i>utile</i> , useful, pl. <i>utili</i> (fem. like masc.)
<i>buon¹ giorno</i> , good-day, good-morning	<i>Vittorio Emmanuele</i> , Victor Emmanuel
<i>il maęstro</i> , the master, teacher	<i>Chiara</i> , Clara
<i>il ritratto</i> , the picture, portrait	<i>Itália</i> , Italy
<i>il re</i> , the king	<i>l' Európa</i> (fem.)
<i>il paęse</i> , the country, <i>i paęsi</i>	<i>il Tęvere</i> , the Tiber
<i>il fiume</i> , the river, <i>i fiumi</i>	<i>dove</i> , where
<i>l' índice</i> , the index finger	<i>da</i> , with, at the house of, among
<i>l' occhio</i> , the eye, <i>gli occhi</i>	
<i>la mano</i> , the hand, <i>le mani</i>	
<i>la távola</i> , the table, <i>le távole</i>	
<i>mio</i> , my, mine, <i>mięi</i> ; fem. <i>mia</i> , <i>mie</i>	
<i>loro</i> , their, theirs (does not	

¹ Cf. 115.

EXERCISE IV.

Saluto i mięi scolari. Buon giorno, signore e signori. Buon giorno, signor maęstro! Hanno i loro libri? Sì, abbiamo i libri. Ecco il mio libro. Ho il libro nella mano dęstra. Il libro ę sulla távola. Mostro il libro coll' índice della mano dęstra. Guarda il libro, Carlo? Sì, guardo il libro cogli occhi. Ę il libro del signor maęstro. Ecco un altro libro. Ę il libro della ragazza. Ę un libro italiano. Ecco un ritratto d' un re italiano, del re Vittorio Emmanuele I.¹ Ę morto il re Vittorio Emmanuele? Sì, ę morto. Dove dimora il re d' Itália? Dimora in Itália. L'Itália ę un bęl paęse. Il Tęvere ę un fiume dell' Itália. Ama l' Itália? Sì, amo l' Itália. Dimora Dante in Itália? No, Dante ę morto. Ę la



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



EXERCISE VI.

Siamo in Itàlia? No, siamo in Amèrica, paese dell' emisfero dell' óvest. L' Amèrica del Nòrd è un gran paese. Vi sono degl' Italiani nell' Amèrica del Nòrd? Sì, vi sono molti Italiani. Vi sono degl' Italiani nóbili. Vi sono anche dei Tedeschi e dei Francesi. Hanno gl' Italiani in Amèrica libri italiani? Sì, ecco dei libri italiani sulla távola. Sono le ópere del Dante. Non vi è altra cosa? Sì, vi è un calamáo con dell' inchióstro dentro. Ho anche delle penne per gli scolari. Non hanno lapis gli scolari? Sì, hanno dei lapis, ma non penne. Sono Italiani gli scolari? No, sono Americani. Hanno dei libri italiani, e anche degl'inglesi.¹ Hanno della carta e dell' inchióstro. Io sono il maestro. Il padre del ragazzo col libro inglese è anche maestro. È un buon maestro di lingua francese. Insegna il francese, lingua bella e molto musicale. Ha degli scolari? Sì, ha degli scolari americani, non ha scolari italiani. Non è a scuola adesso, è a casa.

¹ = "some English ones."

EXERCISE VII.

(1) Have you any ink? (2) No, I have no¹ ink; I have some paper and some pencils. (3) I have some books too, some Italian books. (4) I have some of the works of Dante. (5) Dante was a poet. (6) Was Dante a Frenchman? (7) No, he was an Italian; he was an Italian poet. (8) He lived in Florence. (9) Florence is a city of Italy. (10) It is in Tuscany, a province of Italy. (11) Dante was a Tuscan. (12) He was a politician. (13) He speaks as² a² poet and as² a² politician. (14) He speaks for Italy. (15) Italy speaks with the mouth of Dante. (16) They³ say³ that³ Dante was not a noble.

¹ = "I have not ink"—placing "not" before "have".

² Cf. 49 (3).

³ Si dice che.

VOCABULARY.

il piède, the foot

il leone, the lion

il mare, the sea, ocean

il fratello, the brother

il direttore, the director

la direttrice, the directress

la maestra, the mistress, teacher

l' éssere, the being

l' insetto, the insect

l' autore, the author

la pittura, ¹ the picture	questo, this
la montagna, the mountain	suo his, her, suoi; fem. sua, sue
la sédia, the seat	nostro, our
la panca, the bench	corto, short
la lavagna, the blackboard, slate	lungo, long, lunghi; lunga,
la matita, the pencil, crayon	lunghe
la lezione, the lesson	umano, human
la settimana, the week	spagnuolo, Spanish
la spugna, the sponge	cinque, five
l' ala, the wing. le ali	poichè, for, since
l' ape. the bee	come, like, as
la regina, the queen	studiare, to study
le Alpe (or Alpi), the Alps	danno, they give (from dare, irr.)
tutto, all	

¹ Cf. 38, -ure, and Remark 2 (c).

EXERCISE VIII.

Sulla mia tavola vi sono libri grossi e piccoli, italiani, inglesi, francesi, spagnuoli, e tedeschi. Ecco un libro di Shakespeare. Lo Shakespeare è un autore inglese. Dante e l' Ariosto sono autori italiani. E il Goethe? È un autore tedesco. Tutti questi autori sono famosi. Ecco un ritratto dello Shakespeare. Ha anche ritratti di Dante e dell' Ariosto? Sì, sono nei libri. Dove sono i libri? Nella scuola, sulla tavola. Siamo in una scuola, vi sono molte scuole in questo edificio. Nella nostra scuola vi sono sedie, panche, tavole e lavagne. Vi sono anche delle penne e dei lapis, delle matite e una spugna. Vi è dell' inchiostro nei calamai. Gli scolari diligenti¹ studiano. Studiano una lezione italiana. Hanno anche delle lezioni inglesi e delle lezioni di geografia. Hanno una corta lezione di geografia. Hanno cinque lezioni la settimana.

¹ Observe the position of the adjective.

EXERCISE IX.

(1) Here is our school. (2) There are many classrooms in¹ it¹. (3) The scholars have Italian books. (4) There are a great many tables. (5) Here are the director and directress of the school. (6) They give the lessons to the scholars. (7) The girl on the bench is diligent. (8) The two boys, her brothers, are also diligent. (9) They have long English lessons and short Italian lessons. (10) Here are pictures of two kings of Italy. (11) Here

is a picture of the Alps. (12) The scholars are in school five days of the week. (13) The ⁽²⁾ teachers ⁽³⁾ (masters and mistresses)² ⁽¹⁾ also. (14) The boys and girls² have desks,³ pencils, pens, books, paper, and ink. (15) They are⁴ studying⁴ geography. (16) Geography speaks of continents, countries, oceans, rivers, mountains, and cities. (17) Zoology speaks of animals. (18) The lion is the king of animals. (19) For animals, like human beings, have kings. (20) Bees have queens, not kings. (21) Bees are insects, but insects are animals. (22) Bees have wings, men have feet.

¹ Omit.

² Cf. 46.

³ Táνϰle.

⁴ = "they study"—stúđiano.

VOCABULARY.

il pólso, the pulse	la pronúncia, the pronunciation
il mēđico, the doctor, i mēđici	la guáncia, the cheek, le guance
il singolare, the singular	la scarpa, the shoe [periōri
il plurale, the plural	superiōre, superior, upper, su-
il nome, the name	attaccato, attached, attaccati;
il póllice, the thumb	attaccata, attaccate (p. part.
il dito anulare, the ring-finger	of attaccare)
il duco, the duke, i duchi	sinistro, left, sinistri; sinistra,
l' Egiziano, the Egyptian	sinistre
il monarca, the monarch, i monarchi	irregolare, irregular, irregolari
il figliuolo, the little son	diffícile, difficult, diffícili
l' uomo dabbene, the good man (lit. the man of good)	fōrte, strong, fōrti
l' amico, the friend, gli amici	pōvero, poor, pōveri; pōvera,
l' inimico, the enemy, gl' inimici	pōvere
l' uccello, the bird	rōseo, rosy, rōsei; rōsea, rōsee
l' est, the east	antico, ancient, antichi; antica,
l' únghia, the nail, le únghie	antiche
la gamba, the leg	nessuno, no, none, nessuno; nes-
l' estremità, the extremity, le estremità	suna, nessuna
l' eccezione, the exception, l' eccezioni	sávio, wise, savi; sávia, sávie
l' erre, the "r", l' erri	tastare, feel (first conj.)
la régola, the rule	imparare, to learn (first conj.)
	vede, you see, pl. vedono (from
	vedere, to see, irr.)
	si unisce, is united (lit. "unites
	itself"), from unire



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership
provides unlimited
access to more than
28,000 volumes of
Christian literature for
\$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

(18) No, monarchs are not always good men. (19) Have you read about⁵ the three wise men? That is to say, the three kings of the East.⁶

¹ Piu forti di (with art.).

² Non ha nessuno.

Construct from the word given for "little son" by changing the ending.

⁴ = "is it not true?"

⁵ = "of."

⁶ Cf. 62, Remark 1.

VOCABULARY.

il levare, the rising, sunrise (the infinitive used as a substantive, cf. 51 (a) (2))

il sole, the sun

il collo, the neck

il cane, the dog

il coraggio, the courage

il sentimento, the sentiment

Torino, Turin

la Spagna, Spain

la porta, the door, gate [corner

la svoltata, the turn, street-

la strada, the street

la via, the way, road

la spesa, the cost

la tranquillità, the tranquillity

la vita, the life

noi, we, us

essa, she

me, mi, me, myself

sè, himself, herself, itself

giòvane, young

oggi, to-day

il mercoledì, Wednesday

quando, when

benchè, although (followed by subjunctive)

così, so, thus

però, but, however

fra, within, to

súbito, soon, quickly

lentamente, slowly

volentieri, gladly

davvero, indeed, truly

altre volte, formerly

fino a, as far as, until

insieme, together

consigliare, to counsel

pensare, to think

sperare, to hope

mancare, to lack

accompagnare, to accompany

singhiozzare, to sob

gettare, to throw, cast

restare, to remain, stay

tornare, to return

picchiare, to knock

dimenticare, to forget

passaggiare, to walk

viaggiare, to travel

chiamare, to call

incontrare, to meet

lasciare, to leave, let

lamentarsi,¹ to complain

stare, to be (of health), 3d pers.

sing. ind. pres. sta, pl. stanno
rispondere, to reply (irr. pret.

risposi)

piangere, to weep

abborrire, to abhor

aprire, to open

sentire, to feel

dire, to say (irr. pret. dissi, I
said)

capire, to understand

tossire, to cough

finire, to finish

era, I was

¹ Si is the reflexive pronoun. Cf. 96 and 102.

EXERCISE XII.

Mancava un'ora al levar del sole quando partii. Mia madre m'¹ accompagnò alla porta. Io, singhiozzando, le² gettai le braccia al collo e dissi: No, mamma! Non parto! Resterò con te! Cominciava a³ piangere anche lei, e temeva di³ parlare. Io restava un momento in istrada⁴ a guardare la casa, la porta. Picchierò? Chiamerò la mamma ad aprire? Ma no, dicevo fra me, ma no, lascia stare, mostra che sei uomo, parti subito! Coraggio! E passeggiavo lentamente per la via. Incontrai alla svoltata d'una strada un mio amico.⁵—Ma come, mi domandò, partite?—Sì,—risposi,—parto per la Spagna.—Capisco, ma perchè non siete contento di partire? Viaggerai sempre io, se non temessi le grandi spese. Lascerei oggi la casa, e senza lamentarmi.—E davvero, quando vi⁶ penso adesso finisco per dire⁷: Com'ero sciocco! E mi sento, però, sempre lo stesso! Capisco ancora i sentimenti del bambino d'allora. Abborro il momento del partire. E consiglierai a tutti di restare in casa, benchè viaggiassi molto quando era giovane. Perdiamo molto tutti, perdendo la tranquillità della vita di casa. Così, non viaggiamo più!

¹ M' for mi before a vowel.

² Le . . . al collo = "around her neck". Cf. 98 (2).

³ For the use of a and di before a dependent infinitive cf. 211 (2), 212 (1).

⁴ Istrada for strada because preceded by in. Cf. 36 (b).

⁵ "A friend of mine."

⁶ "Of it."

⁷ "By saying."

ORAL EXERCISE.

(1) Quanto tempo mancava al levar del sole quando partì il ragazzo?

(2) Chi l'accompagnò alla porta?

(3) Che cosa faceva partendo, e che cosa diceva?

(4) Ha parlato la mamma?

(5) Perchè no?

(6) Restava ancora qualche tempo in istrada?

(7) Cosa voleva fare? Cosa diceva fra sè¹?

- (8) Chi incontrò e dove?
 (9) Che domandò l' amico?
 (10) Che cosa rispose²?
 (11) Perché non parte l' amico per la Spagna?
 (12) Lascerrebbe Lei la casa per viaggiare?
 (13) Teme le grandi spese?
 (14) Capisce i sentimenti del ragazzo? Abborrisce il momento del partire?
 (15) Ha viaggiato molto?
 (16) Viaggerebbe ancora volentieri? Viaggerebbe volentieri con me?
 (17) Quando partiremo?

¹ = "to himself."

² From *rispondere*—preterite third person singular.

EXERCISE XIII.

(1) It is still an hour before sunrise. (2) I sleep well, and so I did not hear when you knocked. (3) Who accompanied you¹ to the house? (4) Your brother; he² travelled with me.³ (5) Oh, I understand. You met him¹³ in Turin, did⁴ you⁴ not⁴? (6) When did you⁵ leave Turin? (7) I left⁶ Turin yesterday, but I left home on² Wednesday. (8) I hope that you will stay with us a² long⁷ time. (9) I shall stay a week, then I shall travel as far as Rome. (10) Let us hope, then, that you will return to us. (11) Do not forget your friends. (12) I shall not forget. (13) I shall show you⁸ that I do not forget. (14) Let us speak of your mother and of your brothers; are they well? (15) Yes, they are well. (16) My mother coughs a little, but she feels⁹ well. (17) Shall we take¹⁰ a¹⁰ walk¹⁰ together? (18) Yes, I will gladly take a walk. (19) My brother will accompany us.¹¹ (20) There is a dog; do not be afraid¹² of² him.¹³ (21) I am not afraid of him. (22) My sister used¹⁴ to be afraid¹⁴ of dogs, but now she does¹⁵ not fear them.¹⁶ (23) Let us return to the house now. (24) We shall not go out any² more to-day.

¹ T' before verb. ² Omit. ³ Me. ⁴ = "Is it not true?"

⁵ Use second person plural preterite.

⁶ Use *partire* followed by *di*. ⁷ = "much." ⁸ Ti before verb.

⁹ Supply *si* before verb. ¹⁰ = "walk." ¹¹ Ci before verb.

¹² = "fear." ¹³ Lo before verb.

¹⁴ = "feared formerly." Use imperfect.

¹⁵ = "fears no more." ¹⁶ Li before verb.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



romana era agli estremi, fu da Ottavio e dagli altri due triumviri condotta una colonia militare a Firenze, e a ciascuno dei soldati venne⁵ assegnata una porzione di terreno. Essendo numerosi questi coloni la città è divenuta subito molto più grande. Vi sono ancora molte tracce delle edificazioni del periodo. Così nel luogo dove oggi sono le piazzette di San Simone e dei Peruzzi v'era un anfiteatro romano. Firenze, fin dai primi tempi, ebbe molti diritti, era però in uno stato di dipendenza assoluta da Roma, e le cose di Roma andavano male. Fu alla morte dell'imperatore Teodosio in 395 che l'impero venne diviso fra i suoi due figli. Firenze era naturalmente della parte Occidentale dove fu signore Onorio.

¹ Cf. 36.² "This dear city of ours."³ "We hold it as certain that."⁴ Read quaranta. Cf. 251.⁵ Third person singular preterite indicative of venire. Cf. 81 (b).

ORAL EXERCISE.

- (1) È una città antica Firenze?
- (2) Che cosa va perdendo?
- (3) È interessante la storia dell'origine di Firenze?
- (5) Da chi fu condotta la colonia militare a Firenze nell'anno
40 avanti Gesù Cristo?
- (6) Ch'era allora la condizione della repubblica romana?
- (7) Erano numerosi i coloni?
- (8) È divenuta grande la città di Firenze?
- (9) Sonvi ancora tracce delle edificazioni del periodo?
- (10) Vi era un anfiteatro romano? Dove?
- (11) Era indipendente la città?
- (12) Quando venne diviso l'impero romano?
- (13) Di che parte era Firenze?
- (14) Chi fu signore della parte occidentale?
- (15) Dimenticheranno i Fiorentini la storia dell'origine della città?

EXERCISE XV.

(1) Are you sleepy? No! (2) Then let us talk about¹ the history of Florence. (3) I should be² very glad to listen.² (4) I have not been in Florence long,³ but I love it.⁴ (5) It is an old city, but it is changing⁵ very⁶ much. (6) It was an old city when Columbus was a baby. (7) So it has had a very⁷ long history. (8) We should have to study a long time (in order) to know its history well. (9) A

(1) (3) (4) (2)

R o m a n colony was brought to Florence by Octavius. (10) But there were men in the city who were not Romans. (11) Listen! It is believed that the Etruscans were from Greece. They emigrated into Italy. (12) Fiesole was an Etruscan city, and the first colonists of Florence were from Fiesole. (13) We have spoken of Fiēssole—but who that⁸ has not been in Florence knows Fiēssole? (14) And who does not know Florence? (15) Fiēssole w a s, but Florence is—and will be, let us hope!

¹ =“ of.”

² =“listen gladly.”

³ =“ much time.”

⁴ L' before verb.

⁵ Cambiandosi. For the rendering of “ is ” cf. foregoing exercise.

⁶ Omit.

⁷ Molto.

⁸ Che.

VOCABULARY.

lo strépito, the noise	qui, here
il genitore, the parent	lì, there
il piacere, the pleasure	volere, to wish (irr. voglio, vuoi, I wish, thou wishest)
per piacere, as a favor, please	venire, to come (irr. vieni, come thou)
il cugino, the cousin	giocare (giuocare), to play
la zia, the aunt	rincrescere (impersonal), to be sorry
la gràzie, the grace, favor; gràzie, thanks	rincrescere di, to be sorry for
tranquillo, quiet	ridere, to laugh
piccino, little, little child	ridere di, to laugh at
tanto, such a, so much	star(e) buono, to be good, quiet
niente, nothing	
nemmeno, nor . . . either	
da, to (a person)	

EXERCISE XVI.

Parla Lei? No, parla lui. Dica loro per piacere che non voglio tanto strépito.—Nemmeno io. Voi, bambini, state tranquilli! E tu, Carlino, vieni con me. Così. Starai buono adesso tu? Il cugino ride di te.—No, no, zia, non ride di me! Essi ridono, ma ridono di sè, non di me.—Non fa niente. Io vado dalla mamma, vuoi venire con me? Sì, sì, vieni anche tu.—Io no, vedo lì il mio amico Enrico, voglio giocare con lui.—Oh, cattivo! E i genitori, non sarèsti contento di vederli¹? Mi rincresce.²—Ebbene, venite

voialtri—Grázie, signora, Lei è molto buona, studierò bene adesso io, senza di loro.—Vedete, piccini? È lui che è contento.

¹ Li = “them”—a conjunctive form.

² “I am sorry”—a conjunctive form.

EXERCISE XVII.

(1) Who is talking so much? (2) It is they, not I; children, it is you, isn't it? (3) You, Charlie! Be quiet! I want to study. (4) Be quiet now, please, you (=thou) and he and all of you! (5) He is quiet, and so is she. (6) The two little girls are very good. (7) Yes, they are good—but you! (8) Mrs. Baretta, where are you? (9) I? I am here; don't you see me¹? (10) We are all here; talk with us. (11) How do you do? And your brother, how is he? (12) I am well, but he has been ill. (13) Oh you poor thing²! (14) We were speaking of him yesterday, of you and of him. (15) I am so sorry for him. (16) Let us speak to them about him. They³ will be so sorry too.

¹ Non mi vede—mi being a conjunctive form. ² Omit.

³ Translate “to them”. Cf. Exercise XVI.

VOCABULARY.

la voce, the voice	assicurare, to assure
ad alta voce, aloud	scusare, to excuse
la vista, the sight	spiegare, to explain
a prima vista, at (first) sight	dare, to give (irr.)
la lettura, the reading	sapere, to know (a thing), (irr. so, I know)
l'immagine, the picture, cut	potere, to be able (irr. posso, I can, può, he can)
interessante, interesting	piacere, to please (irr. and often used impersonally—mi piace, I like)
solamente, only	prendere, to take (irr. p. part. preso)
ebbene, well, very well	
allora, then	
poco (po'), little	
ma, but	
già, already	

EXERCISE XVIII.

Dov' è il libro?—Eccolo.—Dáttemelo.—Grázie! Ne parleremo un po'.—Oh, signor maestro, no! La prego di scusarmi, poichè non l'ho letto. È perchè no?—Non ne ho avuto il tempo.—Ebbene,



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books' Full Membership provides unlimited access to more than 28,000 volumes of Christian literature for \$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

vispo, merry, lively	cercare, to seek
stesso, same, the very	liberare, to free
affinchè, that, in order that	osservare, to observe, notice
durante, during	crollare, to shake
non—mai, never	applicarsi, to apply one's self
ora, now	contentarsi, to content one's self
allentare, to loosen	farsi, to become
buttare, to throw	accomiatarsi, to take leave
contrariare, to vex	stringere, to press, draw close
saltare, to jump	fingere, to feign
esclamare, to exclaim	interrompere, to interrupt (irr.
abbassare, to lower, cast down	p. part. interrotto)
sbacciuccare, to kiss repeatedly	proseguire, to continue
ripigliare, to resume	pentirsi, to repent

EXERCISE XX.

Durante la vostra assenza-disse il nonno ai tre giovani-parlerò io un po' di cose fiorentine a' nostri ragazzi.—O che se ne ricorda Lei di certi studj?—domandò Adolfo con arditezza poco rispettosa: Il nonno abbassò gli occhi' si fece un po' rosso e disse con dolcezza ad Adolfo, il quale già s'era pentito della sua domanda inconsiderata. Sì, figliuolo, me ne ricordo. Ai miei tempi si studiavano meno cose, ma quelle poche s'imparavano bene, in modo da non dimenticarle mai più. Oh, erano altri tempi quelli! Ora.....

Povero signor Leopoldo! Non gli fu possibile proseguire la sua tiratina. Adolfo gli era saltato sulle ginocchia, gli aveva buttate le braccia al collo e se lo sbaciucchiava tutto, come se fosse stato un bambino. Il nonno fingendo d'esser contrariato, cercava di liberarsi da quelle carezze tumultuose; ma in fondo ci aveva un gusto matto, e si sarebbe ben guardato di allentare le braccia del vispo nipotino.—Se il nonno sarà¹ contento di voi—disse il signor Leone, accomiatandosi—è molto probabile ch'io vi faccia venir da me per un paio di giorni. Torneremo a Firenze insieme.—Oh bene, oh bene!—esclamarono i due fanciulli, e stréttisi¹ al nonno, lo pregarono affinché la sera stessa ripigliasse il corso di quelle conversazioni, così presto interrutto.

¹ "having pressed up close to", past participle of stringersi. Cf. 102.

² Cf. 229.

EXERCISE XXI.

- (1) "Let us talk (to one another) about the affairs of Florence."
 (2) "Oh yes, grandfather, let us talk together (i.e., to one another)

about them." (3) "Well, boys, do you remember what you have studied about Florentine history?" (4) "We do not remember it as you do,¹ grandfather", said little Adolph. (5) "I have noticed that", said their grandfather. (6) Adolph grew rather red. (7) He repented his remark. (8) "More things are studied now", said he. (9) The old man shook his head. (10) But Adolph jumped on his knees and threw his arms about his neck. (11) The old man freed himself from those stormy caresses. (12) But he really took great pleasure in them. (13) "Well", said the grandfather, "let us content ourselves with what we have." (14) "Let us go away now; since Mr. Leo is taking leave, let us go with him." (15) "We will apply ourselves to the study of Florentine history when we come back."² (16) "These things cannot be done in a moment."

¹ Omit.

² Translate "when we shall come back."

VOCABULARY.

il danno, the damage, loss, cost	la caduta, the fall
il fatto, the fact	le armi, arms
il pópolo, the people, nation, race	la Germánia, Germany
il potere, the power	breve, brief, short
il regno, the kingdom	scellerato, wicked
il veleno, the poison	illegále, unlawful
il soggetto, the subject	bárbaro, barbarous, barbarian
il caso, the case	restío, restive
il familiare, the familiar, intimate friend	análogo, analogous
l'invàsore, the invader [age]	sfortunato, unfortunate
l'ánimo, the mind, heart, courage	verso, towards
il verso, the verse	súbito, soon, quickly
il Longobardo, the Longobard	solo, alone, only
il Franco, the Frank	prima, at first
la gente, the race, nation	indi, afterward, from there
la signoría, the rule, lordship	uscire, to go (or come) out
la salvatichezza, the wildness, rudeness	cadére, to fall (irr. p. part. caduto, pret. caddi, etc.)
la pietà, the piety	tógliere (tòrre), to take, take away, to carry off or away
la grandezza, the greatness	distrúggere, to destroy (irr. p. part. distrutto)
la vivacità, the vivacity	ammansirsi, to grow mild
la violenza, the violence	

arrichirsi, to enrich one's self	narrare, to narrate, tell
avvicinarsi, to approach	lodare, to praise
fermarsi, to stop	intitolare, to entitle, call
conservare, to keep	guidare, to guide
passare, to pass	fondare, to found

EXERCISE XXII.

Chi erano i Longobardi, caro nonno?—domandò Adolfo.—Erano gente pagana—rispose il buon vecchio,—usciti¹ dalla Pannonia. Guidati dal loro feroce re Alboino, si fermarono prima nella parte superiore dell' Italia, che per questo fatto ha conservato il nome di Lombardia; e indi, passati gli Appennini, si avvicinarono verso la Toscana, che in gran parte cadde subito in loro potere. Presero Firenze. Ma breve fu il regno dello scellerato Alboino; poichè il veleno, datogli, come si narra, da un suo familiare, lo tolse di vita dopo soli cinque anni di signoria.—Ne sono contenta!—esclamò l' Adalgisa.—Ma col tempo s'ammansì la feroce salvatichezza dei Longobardi ed ebbero re lodati per pietà, valore e grandezza d' animo. La loro dominazione cadde per le armi dei Franchi, altri popoli bárbari—Scusi, nonno,—domandò con molta vivacità Adolfo—i Franchi non avevano per re il famoso Carlomagno, figlio del re Pipino?—E, nonno—esclamò l' Adalgisa, divenendo un po' rossa—la bella tragedia di Alessandro Manzoni intitolata Adelchi parla della caduta dei Longobardi, non è vero?—Sì.—Oh la bella tragedia, nonno! Oh i bei versi!

¹ As a collective gente may take a plural modifier.

EXERCISE XXIII.

(1) The good old man was talking to his grandsons about the Longobards. (2) They were listening, they were¹ attentive. (3) A large part of Italy had fallen into the power of the wicked Longobards. (4) They had drawn near to Tuscany, beautiful Tuscany. (5) But their unlawful dominion, being² founded upon violence, was destroyed by violence. (6) The Franks, a race come forth in ancient times from Germany, came from France into Italy. (7) The Franks were no longer a heathen people. (8) They had a king called Charlemagne, a great³ man and a very wise⁴ king. (9) He tamed the wild ferocity of his restive subjects. (10) The Franks were called the liberators of Italy, but liberation means, in this case and in analogous cases, only a new invasion



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



frònto tra grandíssimi uómini, tra sòmmi poëti, è diffícile, non è vero? Ha sentito l'anéddoto del frate predicatore che faceva un discorso su Sant' António? Ecco il discorso. "San Paolo, fratelli miei, era un gran santo, e San Pietro, cari fratelli miei, era un grandíssimo santo. Ma Sant' António! . . . wh . . . wh . . . fiuuuu!!

ORAL EXERCISE.

- (1) Chi è l'autore della Divina Commedia?
- (2) Ha scritto il Racine delle commédie?
- (3) Nòmini un famoso autore tedesco.
- (4) Chi è più grande, il Goethe o il Racine?
- (5) È facile il confronto tra uómini grandíssimi?
- (6) Era facile pel frate predicatore il confronto tra certi santi?
- (7) Raccontami l'anéddoto del suo discorso.

EXERCISE XXV.

(1) Victor Emmanuel II. was a great man, a good man, a man of generous instincts. (2) He is often called "the honorable king." (3) And he was indeed more honorable than certain other kings. (4) Here is the anecdote related concerning the origin of his well-known name. (5) Massimo d'Azeglio, a poet and a politician, and a man of Spartan character, had a profound affection for the young monarch. (6) He remarked one day to the king: "Honorable kings have not been numerous in the world." (7) It would be beautiful to begin the series, would it not? (8) Victor Emmanuel was younger than many monarchs, but wiser than most. (9) He never said more than he meant. (10) He had sworn faith to the Statute, and his word was more precious to him than gold, more dear than power. (11) "I shall keep my word," he said. (12) The word of a smaller man than Victor Emmanuel is as precious as his word was. (13) The wisest men feel that.

EXERCISE XXVI.

(For this and the following exercises no special vocabulary is given. The pupil is expected to use the general vocabulary found at the end of the book and the table of irregular verbs, pp 198 and 245 sq.)

Roma, 2 marzo 1900.

Caro Carlo,

La tua cara lettera l'ho ricevuta otto giorni fa. Non ho potuto risponderti presto perché mi sono fatto male alla mano. Ed ecco come. Il babbo ha un così bel temperino, mentre che il mio

è un orrore, un vero orrore. Gli ho detto parecchie volte: Papá mio, prestami il tuo temperino, voglio aguzzare i miei lapis. È finalmente me l' ha dato in mano e—mi sono tagliato subito l' indice della destra.¹ Ma adesso sta quasi bene.—Il nostro viaggio mi ha fatto tanto piacere. Anche ai miei genitori. La città di Roma mi piace moltissimo, coi suoi vecchi palazzi, colle sue grandi vie e col suo bel sole sopra tutto. Lo zio Andrea ci ha condotti, le sorelline e me, al Campidoglio e al Vaticano. Ci fu detto che Sua Santità Leone XIII faceva precisamente la sua passeggiata in carrozza in mezzo alle sue guardie ma naturalmente non abbiamo potuto vederlo. Siamo andati dai tuoi amici gli Altavilla. Il signor Altavilla è stato molto buono per noi. Ci ha detto—casa mia è casa vostra.—Sua moglie è tanto gentile. Anche i loro figli mi sono simpatici. Abbiamo parlato di te e della tua famiglia. Come stanno i tuoi cugini? Ho comprato dei libri per loro. Non abbiamo visto Sua Maestà il re Umberto, ma abbiamo visto la sua camera da letto. Abbiamo visto tante belle cose che ne sono stanco. Buona notte!

Il tuo affmo.² amico,

Enrico.

¹ =mano destra.

² For affectionatissimo, the ordinary Italian abbreviation.

EXERCISE XXVII.

(1) Where is your brother? (2) Is my little sister with him? (3) I have lost my little sister. (4) Have you my book, my pen, and my pencils? (5) My friend has cut his finger. (6) I am looking for my mother. (7) Your parents are not here, they are with their friends. (8) Where are our hats? (9) Mine is here, but I do not see yours. (10) Is not this your hat? (11) No, it is his. (12) I have seen His Excellency the Governor and his wife. (13) I like her face. (14) Is this one of your dogs? (15) Yes, the two dogs are mine. (16) Give me your hand. (17) Have you a book under your arm? (18) Yes, but it is yours, not mine. (19) Thy friends (feminine) are here.

EXERCISE XXVIII.

Il libro che cerchi non c' è.—Non ne sono sicuro, lo cercherò ancora un po'.—Non puoi¹ adoperarne qualche altro?—No, nessun altro servirà, solamente quello lì. Bisogna ben² trovarlo, è quello che devo avere per preparare la mia lezione. Chi l' ha avuto

l' último? Sarà³ quello che me l' avrà³ perduto.—Chi è quell' amico a cui lo imprestasti ieri l' altro? È il figlio della signora la quale ci ha fatto⁴ visita questa mattina. Avrà³ mai dimenticato di renderlo? —È sempre possibile, glielo domanderò, e se è davvero lui che l' ha, non glielo impresterò più per un pezzo. Chi non pensa a rendere non dovrebbe⁵ pigliar in prestito.—Ma guarda dalla finestra, non è lui che viene adesso?—Ma sì, e col mio libro sotto il braccio.—Me ne rallegro per te come se il libro perduto fosse mio.—Buon giorno, Enrico, eccoti il libro che mi hai imprestato. Te ne ringrazio e ti prego di perdonarmi la mia dimenticanza. Avrei⁶ dovuto⁶ riportartelo già ieri. Ma ho avuto una visita di mio cugino, il che m' ha fatto restare in casa tutto ieri. Quale cugino era?—Non lo conosci tu. È fratello di quello ch' era da noi l' anno scorso, quello che aveva il cane da cui fui morso. Ma con tutto ciò era un bel cane, quello, vero? È parlando di cani, di chi è quello che ho visto nel vostro giardino?—È mio, non è vero che è bello? Mio padre me l' ha dato.⁷ Tutte le cose che mi dà⁷ sono belle. Ha gusto lui! Vieni con me e lo vedremo, quel cane! Chi vuol vederlo venga⁸ con noi.

¹ “Can you not”—second person singular indicative present of the irregular *potere*.

² “I must really.”

³ Future of probability—“it must have been he who.” Cf. 229 (2).

⁴ “Made”, from *fare*.

⁵ “Ought not to borrow.”

⁶ “I ought to have.”

⁷ From *dare*. See tables.

⁸ “Let him come.” See *venire* in tables.

EXERCISE XXIX.

(1) Who is knocking? (2) It is I, Henry, and nobody else; who did you think it was? (3) I thought it was² my cousin whom I have been expecting. (4) I am glad to see you; I wanted³ to speak to you about that new boy who is in our class now. (5) That⁵ one⁵ who is so pale and thin? (6) Yes, that is the one. (7) We ought⁶ to⁴ do something for him, we who are more fortunate than he. (8) My father was speaking about him to my mother, and she said she would go to⁷ see his mother. (9) He who does not think of the misfortunes of others does not deserve to⁸ be happy himself, as our copy-book says. (10) Who was it who was asking you yesterday about that other poor boy, the one with⁹ the ragged coat?



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books' Full Membership provides unlimited access to more than 28,000 volumes of Christian literature for \$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

(22) He will hear. (23) The little-old-woman⁹ is bringing him.

(24) Let us rest¹⁰ now on the short-grass (25) I am a-little tired.

¹ Use *áccio*. ² Translate 'are greenish'. ³ *Chẹ*.

⁴ *Bene* with *-ino*. ⁵ *Bene* with *.one*.

⁶ *Contadino* with a diminutive suffix. ⁷ *Scappare*. ⁸ *Prestissimo*.

⁹ Omit "woman", using only the appropriate word formed from *vécchio*.

¹⁰ Reflexive.

VOCABULARY.

Infinitive.	Pres Part.	Past Part.	Preterite	Future.
<i>dire</i> , to say, speak, tell	<i>dicędo</i>	<i>dętto</i>	<i>dissi</i>	
<i>paręre</i> , ¹ to appear, seem		<i>paruto or parso</i>	<i>parvi</i>	<i>parrę</i>
<i>piacęre</i> , ¹ to please		<i>piaciuto</i>	<i>piacqui</i>	
<i>uscire</i> , ¹ to go out		<i>uscito</i>	<i>uscii</i>	
<i>volęre</i> , to wish		<i>voluto</i>	<i>vęlli</i>	

¹ Compounds with *ęssere*.

EXERCISE XXXII.

Note.—All forms required are to be constructed from those given by the rules given in 179. The present participle and future when not given are regular.

(1) He was saying. (2) It¹ pleases me. (3) They have gone out. (4) It had seemed to me. (5) They wished.² (6) Will you go out? (7) Wishing and having wished. (8) They said. (9) They had said. (10) They would say. (11) They might go out (imperfect subjunctive). (12) They appeared.² (13) They would appear. (14) It appears to me. (15) Would they go out? (16) Pleasing me. (17) Did you say² so? (18) They wished² it. (19) He will go out. (20) It has pleased me. (21) I have said so.³ (22) Does it seem to you? (23) Did they wish it? (24) Would it please you? (25) It might please you (imperfect subjunctive). (26) They wished to say it. (27) She has gone out.

¹ Omit. ² Express in two ways. ³ = "I have said it."

EXERCISE XXXIII.

La Signora Carniola, direttrice di una scuola, mi raccontava recentemente questo fatto: aveva visto in una delle sue classi un povero bambino di otto anni con i piedi che uscivano dalle scarpe, e aveva fatto in modo di procurargliene un paio dal Patronato

scolástico. Il bambino chiamato in Direzione a ricevere queste scarpe, rosso di gioia, ringraziava con tanta effusione che la direttrice, commossa della sua ingenua riconoscenza, gli regalò due soldi. Il giorno dopo il bambino va in Direzione tutto contento, battendo i tacchi sul pavimento, e con un pacchettino in mano. “Signora direttrice, la mia madre le manda questo con tante riverenze.” La signora apre e trova nel pacchettino quattro biscotti—di quelli buoni per i canarini! Dopo qualche giorno la madre viene a ringraziare la direttrice del paio di scarpe, e la direttrice, schermendosi, la vuole ringraziare del gentile pensiero del pacchetto di biscotti. “Ma che biscotti?”: la povera donna dice non saperne nulla: si interroga il bambino, il quale tutto rosso confessa che li aveva comprati lui con i due soldi della direttrice.—Gli era parsa la forma più adatta di dimostrare la sua riconoscenza: non un fiore, nè un’ immagine, che avrebbe pure potuto acquistare con i due soldi, ma i biscottini, che essendo la cosa più desiderata per lui, gli pareva dovesse esserlo anche per la direttrice. E questa gentilezza egli l’ aveva voluto fare a nome della madre, perchè gli sembrava meglio ch’ essa partisse da una persona più importante di lui. Così aveva rinunciato per lei all’ onore e al piacere della sua iniziativa.

ORAL EXERCISE

- (1) Chi raccontava l’ aneddoto del povero bambino riconoscente?
- (2) Che età (quanti anni) aveva il bambino?
- (3) Era contento d’ avere le belle scarpe nuove?
- (4) Come ringraziò la direttrice?
- (5) Che cosa gli regalò essa?
- (6) Cosa tiene in mano il giorno dopo quando va in Direzione?
- (7) Cosa dice?
- (8) Ch’ era nel pacchettino?
- (9) Quando viene la madre e perchè?
- (10) Chi aveva regalato i biscotti alla signora direttrice?
- (11) Con che denari li aveva comprati?
- (12) Perchè ha scelto dei biscotti?

EXERCISE XXXIV.

(1) I will tell you an anecdote, if you like. (2) It is a fact told me recently by the directress of a school. (3) She said that there was in one of the classes a poor little girl of six years who came to school with her¹ feet coming through her shoes. (4) The teacher

managed to get her a pair of new ones. (5) The child came to school a few days after red with joy, clicking the heels of her¹ new shoes on the floor. (6) She was carrying in her hand some flowers and a little picture of Saint Catherine of Sienna. (7) She went into the directress' room and made her a present of them.² (8) This appeared to her the best way to show her gratitude. (9) The picture was very beautiful to her and it seemed to her that it must be so also to the directress. (10) But the flowers were really more beautiful than the picture, and the kindly thought more beautiful than the flowers. (11) I like flowers very much; do you like them too?

¹ How is this to be translated?

² Regalare takes a direct object. Cf. Exercise XXXIII.

EXERCISE XXXV.

NOTE.—The pupil will explain the use of the prepositions found in this extract, referring to the paragraphs above. This and Exercises XXXVI, XXXVII, and XXXVIII are an adaptation of De Amicis' *l'Infermiere di Tata*. (*Cugre*.)

La mattina d' un giorno piovosso di marzo, un ragazzo vestito da campagnuolo, tutto inzuppato d' acqua e infangato, con un involto di panni sotto il braccio, si presentava al portinajo dell' Ospedale dei Pellegrini di Nápoli, e domandava di suo padre, presentando una lettera. Aveva un bel viso ovale d' un bruno pallido, gli occhi penserosi, e due grosse labbra semiaperte, che lasciavan vedere i denti bianchissimi. Veniva da un villaggio dei dintorni di Nápoli. Suo padre, partito di casa l' anno addietro per andare a cercar lavoro in Francia, era tornato in Italia e sbarcato pochi dì prima a Nápoli dove, ammalatosi improvvisamente, aveva appena fatto in tempo a scrivere un rigo alla famiglia per annunziarle il suo arrivo e dirle che entrava all' ospedale. Sua moglie desolata di quella notizia, non potendo moversi di casa perche aveva una bimba inferma e un piccino, aveva mandato a Nápoli il figliuolo maggiore, con qualche soldo, ad assistere suo padre. Il ragazzo aveva fatto dieci miglia di cammino. Il portinajo, data un' occhiata alla lettera, chiamò un infermiere e gli disse che condusse¹ il ragazzo dal padre.

—Che padre?—domandò l' infermiere.

Il ragazzo, tremante² per il timore d' una trista notizia, disse il nome.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



desolation of his mother at the arrival of the letter. (17) And he thought of death,¹⁵ he saw his father dead, his mother dressed in¹⁶ black, the family in misery.

¹ = "opened."

² = "entering in."

³ Omit.

⁴ Translate "through air."

⁵ = "arrived."

⁶ What pronoun would be used?

⁷ Reflexive.

⁸ = "how much."

⁹ = "He had the face swollen."

¹⁰ = "recognize." Use *või*.

¹¹ = "to breathe."

¹² Use *stare* with the present participle.

¹³ Cf. 222 (3).

¹⁴ Translate with reflexive verb "to sink one's self".

¹⁵ Cf. 216.

¹⁶ Cf. 198 (4).

EXERCISE XXXVII.

E stette molto tempo così. Quando una mano leggièra gli toccò una spalla, ed ei si riscosse: era una monaca.—Che cos' ha¹ mio padre?—le domandò subito.—È tuo padre?—disse la suora, dolcemente.—Sì, è mio padre, son venuto. Che cos' ha? Coraggio, ragazzo,—rispose la suora, ora verrà il medico.—E s' allontanò, senza dir altro.

Dopo mezz' ora vide entrare in fondo al camerone il medico, accompagnato da un assistente; la suora e un infermiere li seguivano. Cominciaron la visita, fermandosi a ogni letto. Finalmente arrivarono al letto vicino. Prima ch' il medico si staccasse da questo il ragazzo si levò in piedi, e quando gli s' avvicinò, si mise a piangere.—È il figliuolo del malato, disse la suora. Fatti animo, figliuolo, disse il medico. È grave, ma c' è ancora speranza. Il ragazzo avrebbe voluto domandar altro; ma non osò. E allora cominciò la sua vita d' infermiere.

Non potendo far altro accomodava le coperte al malato, gli dava da bere. Il malato lo guardava qualche volta; ma non dava segno di riconoscerlo. Senonchè il suo sguardo si arrestava sempre più a lungo sopra di lui. E così passò il primo giorno. Il giorno dopo parve che gli occhi del malato rivelassero un principio di coscienza. Alla voce carezzevole del ragazzo pareva che un' espressione vaga di gratitudine gli brillasse un momento nelle pupille, e una volta mosse un poco le labbra come se volesse dir qualche cosa. Dopo ogni breve assopimento, riaprendo gli occhi, sembrava che cercasse il suo piccolo infermiere. Verso sera, avvicinandogli il bicchiere alle labbra, il ragazzo credette di veder sulle labbra gonfie un leggierrissimo sorriso. E allora cominciò a riconfortarsi, a sperare. E con la speranza d' essere inteso, almeno confusamente, gli parlava, gli parlava a lungo, e lo esortava a farsi animo. È

benchè dubitasse sovente di non esser capito, pure parlava, perchè gli pareva che, anche non comprendendo, il malato ascoltasse con un certo piacere la sua voce.

¹ Cf. 84.

EXERCISE XXXVIII.

(1) And so passed the second¹ day, and the third, and the fourth. (2) The hours, the days passed, and the boy was always there with his father, palpitating at his every sigh, tossed without ceasing between hope and discouragement. (3) The fifth day, unexpectedly, the sick-man grew worse. (4) The doctor when² interrogated shook his head, as if² to³ say that it was finished.⁴ (5) The boy wept and yet one thing consoled him. (6) In spite of² the² fact² that he was growing worse it seemed to him⁵ that the sick-man was⁶ slowly regaining a little intelligence. (7) He looked always more fixedly at² the boy, he wished to take his medicine only from him, and he often made a movement of the lips as if he wished to say something. (8) And the boy continued to watch him. (9) Suddenly about four in⁷ the afternoon a man entered the room, followed by one of the sisters. (10) On seeing him the boy gave a sharp cry, the man turned⁸ and also⁹ gave a cry—"Father!"—"Beppo! My little Beppo!"—(11) "But how is this," exclaimed the father, looking at the sick-man, "they have taken you to the bed of another!" (12) "Oh, how glad I am! how glad I am!" stammered the boy. (13) And he could say no more. (14) "And now, my son, I am well, come, let us go home. (15) We can still reach home this evening." (16) The boy turned⁸ to look at the sick-man, who at that moment opened his eyes and looked at² him. (17) "No, papa," said he, "wait—I cannot. (18) There is¹⁰ that old man.² (19) I have been¹¹ with him about five days. (20) I thought he was you. (21) He always looks at me, he looks at² me and then I give him something² to¹² drink. (22) I do not know who he is, but he wants me, he would die alone; let me stay here, dear papa!" (23) "Stay," said the father, "stay; you have a heart. (24) I shall go home at once to relieve your mother of anxiety. (25) Here is money for your needs. Good-by, my brave son."

¹ Cf. 252 and 129.

² Omit.

³ Cf. 215 (a).

⁴ Use feminine form. This and similar cases are a sort of neuter.

⁵ Use disjunctive form. Why? ⁶ Cf. 81 (d). ⁷ Cf. 198 (3).

⁸ Reflexive verb. ⁹ Place "he also" at end of sentence.

¹⁰ C'è. Cf. 242.

¹¹ Cf. 225.

¹² Cf. 213 (d).

EXERCISE XXXIX.

Quante volte la settimana hanno lezione d'italiano?—Quattro volte, il lunedì, il martedì, il giovedì e il venerdì. Non abbiamo lezione il mercoledì, né il sabato, e la Domenica è festa.—Quanti abbiamo del mese?—È oggi il quindici. Oggi è venerdì. Domani l'altro è Domenica. Mercoledì prossimo sarà il venti luglio, è l'anniversario della nascita del poeta Petrarca. Ha le opere del Petrarca, signorina?—Sissignore,¹ ne ho qui un volume. È il secondo. Ecco il mio sonetto prediletto alla pagina dugento trentasette. Leggo spesso il Petrarca.—Mi dica qualche cosa della sua vita.—Volentieri, ma capirà che non posso aver sulla punta delle dita tutti i particolari più minuti della vita di messer Francesco. Egli nacque in Arezzo.—Allora non era fiorentino?—Mah! Arezzo è così vicino a Firenze! Neppur Giovanni Boccaccio è nato a Firenze, ma chi oserebbe non chiamar fiorentine le sue novelle immortali?—Bravo! Continui.—Ebbene, Francesco Petrarca nacque ad Arezzo il venti luglio del milletrecentoquattro. Suo padre, amico di Dante e anch'esso del partito ghibellino, era stato bandito da Firenze, dove esercitava un modesto ufficio pubblico. Riparatosi a Pisa, affidò i primi studj del figlio suo, allora in età di sette anni, ad un vecchio grammatico di quella città. Due anni dopo, avendo la morte dell'imperatore Enrico settimo tolta ogni speranza ai Ghibellini, il padre del Petrarca condusse la sua famiglia ad Avignone, dove Clemente quinto aveva trasferito la corte pontificia. Nel milletrecentoventisette, il Petrarca, che aveva ventitrè anni, s'invaghì d'una bellissima giovane avignonese, chiamata Laura. Se ella fosse stata libera, certo il Petrarca non avrebbe esitato un momento a farla sua moglie, ma era sposa ad Ugo di Sode. Nulladimeno, secondo l'usanza di quel secolo e specialmente di quel paese, cominciò a scrivere per lei poesie che subito lo resero illustre. Due amori dominano tutta la vita del Petrarca, l'amore di Laura e quello della patria. Fu trovato morto il diciotto luglio del milletrecentosettantaquattro nella sua biblioteca ad Arquà. Aveva la testa piegata sopra un libro aperto, che era l'Enéide di Virgilio.

¹ Frequently used for sì signore.

EXERCISE XL.

(1) The fourteenth century was the golden age of Italian literature. (2) Dante was born in Florence in the month of May, 1265,



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership
provides unlimited
access to more than
28,000 volumes of
Christian literature for
\$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

imparare bene, e il p aroco mi dar  le lezioni.—Posso far cos  anch' io, mamma? Faremo il possibile tutt' e due, non fateci andar via!—Ebbene, ne parleremo un' altra volta, vi siete riposati, facciamo ancora un p  di passeggiata.

¹ Cf. 99 (b).

² See *mettere*, 61.

³ From *venire*, 132.

⁴ From *c(u)ocere*, 99.

⁵ From *riuscire*, 130.

EXERCISE XLII.

(1) It was very beautiful weather yesterday. (2) Did you take¹ a walk? (3) Yes, we took a walk together, Andrew and I. (4) We went¹ into the country and stayed there all day. (5) Do you remember that day, two years ago, when you and I went to Fi sole together? You and Charles and I. (6) Yes, we all remember that, I am sure, and shall remember it always. (7) Now we are going to school together, all three of us. (8) Our parents were thinking of entering us two years and a half ago, but Charles was not well then. (9) The rector gave him lessons at home until he was well enough to go away. (10) But he did all that he could at home. (11) We will all do our best² in school so that our parents may be proud of us and glad when we go³ home. (12) Do they give you long lessons? (13) Yes, they gave us very long lessons last year, but we had time also to take a walk every day. (14) It does one good to take a walk every day. (15) We often went into the country and stayed there all day. (16) We rested under the trees and had beautiful games, then when we were rested we walked on⁴ a little farther.⁵ (17) How pleasant it is under the trees after one⁴ has had⁶ a walk!

¹ Preterite.

² “=possible.”

³ Use future.

⁴ Omit.

⁵ =“yet a little.”

⁶ =“to have had.”

EXERCISE XLIII.

(1) Sit down. (2) Why are you so troubled? (3) Because I am going to my sick friend's house.¹ (4) I must go there sometime or other, although I cannot bear the thought of it. (5) Can you go with me? (6) Yes, but I have to finish my letter first. (7) I can² do it in a few minutes. (8) I ought to have³ written it yesterday, but I could not do so⁴ because my little brother was slightly-ill⁵ and I had to amuse him the whole afternoon. (9) I will wait. (10) Very well. We can go in ten minutes, can we not? (11) Yes.—Now I am ready.⁶ (12) I am so glad that you can go with me; I really could not³ have gone alone.

¹ Da.

² Future.

³ Cf. 82.

⁴ “it.”

⁵ Cf. 166.

⁶ Use *ecco*.

EXERCISE XLIV.

Anche il cammello è un animale molto importante-non si sa qui in Europa come' è importante. Noi non abbiamo che quelli che ci vengono fatti vedere ne' serragli, e si suole pensarvi come a curiosità. Però non sono animali più utili agli abitanti di certi paesi che i camelli. Paiono fatte queste povere bestie per quei vasti deserti sabbiosi, che non offrono al povero viaggiatore nè un sorso d'acqua, nè un filo d'erba, nè un asilo che valga a difenderlo da' raggi cocenti del sole. Ma i mercanti che debbono portare le loro merci da un paese all'altro, debbon pure traversarli que' piani desolati; guai a loro però se non avessero i camelli! Possono questi sopportar la sete molti giorni e non ne dogliono come dorrèbbero per esempio i cavalli. Dopo un giorno di viaggio faticosissimo giacciono tutta la notte sulla sabbia senza dolersene. Portano con un movimento che piace a molti le persone sedute sul dorso. Si può chiamarli, e con ragione, le navi del deserto. Ma dovremmo sapere che anche queste navi fanno alle volte naufragio. Esauriti finalmente cadono su quella sabbia cocente dove rassomigliano a quelle altre navi naufragate che si vedono sugli scogli pericolosi e sulle piagge crudeli, battute, mezzo coperte dall'elemento che una volta era per loro solo un cammino sotto i piedi.

EXERCISE XLV.

(1) We⁽¹⁾ Europeans do not know how important⁽³⁾ an⁽²⁾ animal⁽²⁾ the camel is. (2) We are wont to think of the horse as the most useful animal. (3) We see camels only in menageries; nevertheless we ought not to think of them as mere curiosities. (4) Many poor travelers would be⁽³⁾ lost in the great sandy deserts where no horse could live, were it not that these poor beasts seem made for such countries. (5) A merchant, an inhabitant of a dry, sandy land, told me that his camel did not suffer from thirst during many days of most wearisome travel, and that it bore his wares over those desolate plains without complaining. (6) The motion of the camel was also very agreeable to him, as to many people. (7) By day he traveled seated on his camel's back, and by night he lay on the sand by its side. (8) There were no trees which could defend him from the scorching rays of the sun, and his⁽⁴⁾ head ached sometimes from the heat. (9) But it mattered nothing to the camel;

it seemed as though he did not notice⁵ the heat. (10) The desert is wont to inspire fear in⁶ Europeans who do not know that the camel is a ship which can cross it safely. (11) And yet it sometimes happens that these curious and interesting ships make shipwreck. (12) I have seen some which had fallen upon the hot sand and were lying there like the wrecks seen on cruel reefs by the seashore. (13) These ships belong to the desert and at last are conquered by their proper element—that is, the sand—as those other ships belong to the sea and at last fall, conquered by the water. (14) I have wished⁷ to see the ships of the desert, and now I am³ content. (15) I know they can with reason be called so. (16) If I am ever obliged to cross the desert I shall choose a faithful camel as my ship, and I shall not be silent concerning² its virtues. (17) I am not silent concerning² them now. (18) Did it please you to hear about these animals? (19) We ought to know more about them than we generally do.⁸

¹ Noialtri.² Omit.³ Use *rimanére*.⁴ Use *gli*.⁵ Use *badare*.⁶ = "to."⁷ Preterite.⁸ Repeat *sapére*.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



ABBREVIATIONS.

<i>adj.</i>	adjective	<i>num.</i>	numeral
<i>adv.</i>	adverb	<i>part.</i>	participle
<i>art.</i>	article	<i>pers.</i>	person—personal
<i>aug.</i>	augmentative	<i>pl.</i>	plural
<i>conj.</i>	conjunction	<i>poss.</i>	possessive
<i>contr.</i>	contraction	<i>pp.</i>	past participle
<i>def.</i>	definite	<i>pr.</i>	proper
<i>dem.</i>	demonstrative	<i>prep.</i>	preposition
<i>dim.</i>	diminutive	<i>pres.</i>	present
<i>f.</i>	feminine noun	<i>pron.</i>	pronoun
<i>indef.</i>	indefinite.	<i>ref.</i>	reflexive
<i>inf.</i>	infinitive	<i>rel.</i>	relative
<i>interj.</i>	interjection	<i>sing.</i>	singular
<i>interrog.</i>	interrogative	<i>v.</i>	verb
<i>m.</i>	masculine noun	<i>va.</i>	active verb
<i>n.</i>	noun	<i>vn.</i>	neuter verb

Irregular verbs are preceded by an asterisk.

Where *m.*, *f.*, follow the second of two nouns both are of the same gender.

Where *va.*, *vn.*, follow the second of two verbs both are active or neuter as indicated.

A dash indicates the repetition of the subject-word.

ITALIAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

A

a, *prep.*, at, to

a' = ai, *cf. art. il*, 40, 43

abbassare, *va.*, to lower; — gli occhi, to cast down the eyes

abbastanza, *adv. and n.*, enough, sufficiently

abbondanza, *f.*, abundance

abitante, *m.*, inhabitant

aborrire, *va.*, to abhor

acommiatare, *va.*, to take leave

accomodare, *va.*, to accommodate, to put in order, to arrange

accompagnare, *va.*, to accompany

acqua, *f.*, water

acquistare, *va.*, to obtain, to gain

adatto, *adj.*, suitable

addietro, *adv.*, behind

adesso, *adv.*, now

adoperare, *va.*, to use, to make use of

affanno, *m.*, grief

affannosamente, *adv.*, with difficulty

affettuoso, *adj.*, affectionate

affezione, *f.*, affection

affidare, *va.*, to entrust

affinchè, *adv.*, in order to, to the end that

aguzzare, *va.*, to sharpen

ala, *f.*, wing

allentare, *va.*, to loosen

allontanarsi, *va.*, to go away

allora, *adv.*, then

almeno, *adv.*, at least

Alpe, *f. pl.*, the Alps

altro, *adj.*, other, different, any thing else

amare, *va.*, to love, to like

amico, *m.*, friend

ammalare, *vn.*, to fall ill

ammansire, *va.*, to tame; *vn.*, to become mild

amore, *m.*, love, affection

análogo, *adj.*, analogous

anche, *adv.*, also

ancora, *adv.*, still, yet

***andare**, *vn.*, to go

anéddoto, *m.*, anecdote

anfiteatro, *m.*, amphitheatre

ánimo, *m.*, mind, courage, heart; fare —, to take courage

anniversário, *m.*, anniversary

anno, *m.*, year

annunziare, *va.*, to announce

ansioso, *adj.*, anxious, uneasy

antico, *adj.*, ancient, old

anulare, *m.*, ring-finger

ape, *f.*, bee [culty

appena, *adv.*, scarcely, with diffi-

***apprendere**, *va.*, to learn

***aprire**, *va.*, to open

arditezza, *f.*, boldness

ária, *f.*, air, look, mien

arrestarsi, *v. ref.*, to stay, to rest

arrichirsi, *v. ref.*, to grow rich

arrivare, *vn.*, to reach, to arrive at

arrivo, *m.*, arrival

ascoltare, *va.*, to listen
 asilo, *m.*, asylum, refuge
 assegnare, *va.*, to assign
 assenza, *f.*, absence
 assicurare, *va.*, to assure
 assistente, *m.*, one who assists,
 an attendant

*assistere, *va.*, to assist
 assoluto, *adj.*, absolute
 assopimento, *m.*, drowsiness,
 coma
 attaccare, *va.*, to attach, unite
 autore, *m.*, author
 avanti, *adv.*, before
 *avere, *va.*, to have; — sonno,
 to be sleepy
 Avignone, *pr. n.*, Avignon
 avvicinarsi, *v. ref.*, to approach

B

badare, *vn.*, to notice
 bambino, *m.*, baby, child
 banca, *f.*, bench
 bandire, *va.*, to banish
 bárbaro, *adj.*, barbarous
 báttete, *va.*, to beat, strike
 bello, *adj.*, beautiful
 benchè, *adv.*, although
 bene, *adv.*, well
 *bere (bévere), *va.*, to drink
 béstia, *f.*, beast
 bianco, *adj.*, white
 biblioteca, *f.*, library
 bicchière, *m.*, tumbler, glass
 bimbo, *m.*, infant
 biscotto, *m.*, biscuit
 bisognare, *vn.*, must, to be neces-
 sary
 bocca, *f.*, mouth
 bráccio, *m.*, arm
 bravo, *adj.*, brave, skillful; *in-*
terj., expressive of approval

breve, *adj.*, brief, short
 brillare, *vn.*, to shine
 bruno, *adj.*, brown, dark
 bue, *m.*, ox; carne di —, beef
 buono, *adj.*, good, kind
 buttare, *va.*, to throw, fling

C

*cadére, *vn.*, to fall
 caduta, *f.*, fall
 caffè, *m.*, coffee
 calamáio, *m.*, inkstand
 caldo, *adj.*, warm, hot
 calzoni, *m. pl.*, trousers
 cambiare, *va.*, to change
 cámara, *f.*, room, chamber
 camerone, *m. aug.* of cámara, big
 room, ward (of a hospital)
 cammello, *m.*, camel
 cammino, *m.*, road
 campagna, *f.*, country
 campagnuolo, *m. and adj.*, rus-
 tic
 Campidoglio, *m.*, the Capitol (at
 Rome)
 campo, *m.*, field
 canarino, *m.*, canary-bird
 cane, *m.*, dog
 capire, *va.*, to understand
 cappello, *m.*, hat
 caráttere, *m.*, character
 carezza, *f.*, caress
 carezzévole, *adj.*, caressing
 Carlo, *pr. n.*, Charles
 carne, *f.*, meat
 caro, *adj.*, dear
 carròzza, *f.*, carriage
 carta, *f.*, paper
 casa, *f.*, house
 cavallo, *m.*, horse
 cercare, *va.*, to search, seek
 certo, *adj.*, certain



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership
provides unlimited
access to more than
28,000 volumes of
Christian literature for
\$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

dęstra, *f.*, right hand
di, *prep.*, of
dì, *m.*, day
diciotto, *num.*, eighteen
dieci, *num.*, ten
***difendere**, *va.*, to defend, protect
difficile, *adj.*, difficult
dimenticanza, *f.*, forgetfulness
dimenticare, *va.*, to forget
dimorare, *vn.*, to live, dwell
dimostrare, *va.*, to show, prove
dintorno, *m.*, environs
dipendenza, *f.*, dependence
***dire**, *va.*, to say, tell, relate
direttore, *m.*, director
direttrice, *f.*, directress
direzione, *f.*, management, director's office
diritto, *m.*, right
discorso, *m.*, discourse, sermon
dito, *m.*, finger
***divenire**, *vn.*, to become
***dividere**, *va.*, to divide
dolce, *adj.*, sweet, soft
dolcemente, *adv.*, softly, gently
dolcezza, *f.*, sweetness, mildness
***dolere**, *vn.*, to suffer; — **dolersi**, *ref.*, to lament, complain of
domando, *f.*, demand, question
domandare, *va.*, to demand, ask;
— **di**, to ask for, ask after
domani, *adv.*, to-morrow;
— **l'altro**, day after to-morrow
Doménica, *f.*, Sunday
dominare, *va.*, to dominate, command
dominazione, *f.*, domination
donna, *f.*, woman
dopo, *prep. and adv.*, after, afterwards
dorso, *m.*, back
dove, *adv.*, where

***dovere**, *va.*, to be necessary, must, ought
dubitare, *vn.*, to doubt, fear
duca, *m.*, duke
due, *num.*, two
dugento, *num.*, two hundred
durante, *adj. and prep.*, during

E

e, *conj.*, and
ebbene, *interj.*, very well
eccezione, *f.*, exception
ecco, *adv. and interj.*, here is, there is, behold
edificazione, *f.*, edification, building
Egiziano, *adj. and m.*, Egyptian
elemento, *m.*, element
emigrare, *vn.*, to emigrate
emisfero, *m.*, hemisphere
Enrico, *pr. n.*, Henry
entrare, *vn.*, to enter
erba, *f.*, herb, grass
erre, *f.*, the letter "r"
***esaurire**, *va.*, to exhaust
esclamare, *va.*, to exclaim
esempio, *m.*, example; **per** —, for instance
esercitare, *va.*, to exercise, follow some business, fill office
esitare, *vn.*, to hesitate
esortare, *va.*, to exhort
espressione, *f.*, expression
essa, *pers. pron.*, she
***essere**, *vn.*, to be
essere, *m.*, being
esso, *pers. pron.*, he
estremità, *f.*, extremity
estremo, *m.*, extreme, extremity
età, *f.*, age.
Etrusco, *adj. and m.*, Etruscan
Europa, *f. pr. n.*, Europe

F

famiglia, *f.*, family
 familiare, *m.*, familiar, intimate friend
 fanciullo, *m.*, child, little boy
 *fare, *va.*, to do, make;—entrare, to put; — male, to injure, hurt; — una passeggiata, to take a walk; — vento, to blow; tre mesi fa, three months ago; farsi, *ref.*, to become
 faticoso, *adj.*, laborious, fatiguing, hard
 fatto, *m.*, fact
 fatto, *adj* and *pp.* of fare, complete, finished
 favorito, *m.*, favorite
 fede, *f.*, faith
 fermare, *va.*, to stop; fermarsi, *ref*, to stop. pause
 festa, *f.*, holiday, festival
 figlio, *m.*, son, child
 figlia, *f.*, daughter, child
 figliuolo, *m.*, son, little son
 filo, *m.*, thread, blade
 fin, fino, fino a, *adv.*, until, as far as; — da, from
 finale, *adj.*, final
 finalmente, *adv.*, finally
 finestra, *f.*, window
 *fingere, *va.*, to feign
 finire, *va.*, to finish
 fiore, *m.*, flower
 Fiorentino, *pr. n.* and *adj.*, Florentine
 Firenze, *pr. n.*, Florence
 fiume, *m.*, river
 fondo, *m.*, depth, bottom, heart, end
 forma, *f.*, form, manner, way
 forte, *adj.*, strong
 fra, *prep.*, within, among, to

francese, *adj.* and *pr. n.*, French
 Francia, *f. pr. n.*, France
 franco, *adj.* and *pr. n.*, Frank
 frate, *m.*, monk, brother (in a religious order)
 fratello, *m.*, brother
 fuori, *prep.*, without, outside

G

gamba, *f.*, leg
 genitore, *m.*, parent
 gente, *f.*, nation, people, race
 gentile, *adj.*, gentle, courteous, nice
 gentilezza, *f.*, courtesy, kindness
 Germania, *f.*, *pr. n.*, Germany
 gettare, *va.*, to throw
 ghibellino, *adj.* and *pr. n.*, Ghibelline
 già, *adv.*, already
 giacchetta, *f.*, jacket
 *giacere, *vn.*, to lie down
 giardino, *m.*, garden
 ginocchio, *m.*, knee
 gioia, *f.*, joy, mirth
 giorno, *m.*, day
 giovane (giovine), *adj.*, young
 giovane (giovine), *m.* and *f.*, youth, young man, young woman
 giovedì, *m.*, Thursday
 giocare (giuocare), *va.*, to play
 giuoco, *m.*, game, sport
 giurare, *va.*, to swear
 grammatico, *m.*, grammarian
 grande, *adj.*, great, big, wide
 grandezza, *f.*, greatness, largeness
 grave, *adj.*, heavy, serious
 grazia, *f.*, grace; *pl.* grazie, thanks
 Grecia, *f. pr. n.*, Greece

grosso, *adj.*, big, full
 guai, *interj.*, woe! beware!
 guância, *f.*, cheek
 guardare, *va.*, to look at
 guárdia, *f.*, guard
 guidare, *va.*, to guide
 guizzare, *vn.*, to glide, slide
 gusto, *m.*, taste, satisfaction,
 pleasure

I

ięri, *adv.*, yesterday; — l' altro,
 day before yesterday
 il, *def. art.*, *cf.* 40, 43
 illustre, *adj.*, illustrious, famous
 immáGINE, *f.*, picture, image
 immortale, *adj.*, immortal
 imparare, *va.*, to learn
 imperatore, *m.*, emperor
 importante, *adj.*, important
 imprestare, *va.*, to lend
 improvvisamente, *adv.*, unex-
 pectedly, suddenly
 in, *prep.*, in, into
 inchiostro, *m.*, ink
 inconsiderato, *adj.*, inconsider-
 ate, foolish
 incontrare, *va.*, to meet
 indi, *adv.*, afterwards
 índice, *m.*, index-finger
 infangare, *va.*, to soil with mud
 infermiere, *m.*, nurse, attendant
 infermo, *adj.*, infirm, ill
 ingenuo, *adj.*, ingenuous
 inglese, *adj. and pr. n.*, English
 inimico, *m. and adj.*, enemy, in-
 iniziativa, *f.*, initiative [imical
 insegnare, *va.*, to teach
 insetto, *m.*, insect
 insieme, *adv. and prep.*, together
 *inténdere, *va.*, to understand,
 intend, mean

interessante, *adj.*, interesting
 interrogare, *va.*, to interrogate,
 ask, examine
 *interrómpere, *va.*, to interrupt
 intitolare, *va.*, to entitle
 invaghire, *va. and ref.*, to fall in
 love with
 invasore, *m.*, invader
 involto, *m.*, bundle, packet
 inzuppare, *va.*, to soak
 io, *pers. pron.*, I
 irregolare, *adj.*, irregular
 Itália, *f. pr. n.*, Italy

L

labbro, *m.*, lip
 lamentarsi, *v. ref.*, to lament
 lapis, *m.*, pencil
 lasciare, *va.*, to leave, let
 latte, *m.*, milk
 lavagna, *f.*, blackboard
 *leggere, *va.*, to read
 leggięro, *adj.*, light
 lei, *pers. pron.*, her, she (you);
 dare del—, to use the pronoun
 lei ("you") in addressing one
 leone, *m.*, lion
 Leone, *pr. n.*, Leo
 lęttera, *f.*, letter
 letto, *m.*, bed
 lettura, *f.*, reading
 levare, *va.*, to lift; *v. ref.*, to rise,
 arise; *n.*, rising
 lezione, *f.*, lesson
 lì, *adv.*, there
 liberare, *va.*, to liberate, set free
 líbero, *adj.*, free
 libro, *m.*, book
 Lídia, *f. pr. n.*, Lydia
 lingua, *f.*, tongue, language
 lo, *def. art. and pers. pron.*, him,
 it, the



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



naufrágio, *m.*, shipwreck
nave, *f.*, ship
ne, *pers. pron.*, us, to us, some,
of it, for it; *adv.*, thence
nè, *conj.*, neither, nor
nemmeno, *adv.*, neither, nor-
either, not even
neppure, *adv.*, neither, nor-either
nessuno, *adj. and indef. pron.*,
no, none, nobody
nevvero, *contr. of non è vero*
nięnte, *m.*, nothing
nipote, *m.*, nephew
no, *adv.*, no, not
noi, *pers. pron.*, we, us
nominare, *va.*, to name
non, *adv.*, no, not; — **che**, only
nonno, *m.*, grandfather
nostro, *poss.*, our, ours
notizia, *f.*, news, notice
notte, *f.*, night
novęlla, *f.*, story, tale
nulla, *m. and adv.*, nothing
nulladimęno, *adv.*, nevertheless
nuovo, *adj.*, new

O

o, *interj.*, oh!
occhiata, *f.*, glance
occhio, *m.*, eye
occidentale, *adj.*, occidental,
western
***offrire**, *va.*, to offer
oggi, *adv.*, to-day
ogni, *adj.*, every
omino, *dim. of uomo*, young
man, little man
onorabile, *adj.*, honorable
onore, *m.*, honor
opera, *f.*, work, piece of work,
literary production
operáio, *m.*, workman

ora, *f.*, hour; *adv.*, now
ordinário, *adj.*, ordinary, usual
ordinariamente, *adv.*, ordinarily
origine, *f.*, origin
oro, *m.*, gold
orrore, *m.*, horror
osare, *vn.*, to dare
ospedale, *m.*, hospital
osservazione, *f.*, observation
otto, *num.*, eight
ovest, *m.*, west

P

pacco, package; *dim.*, **pacchetto**
pace, *f.*, peace
padre, *m.*, father
paese, *m.*, country
página, *f.*, page
páio, *m.*, pair
palazzo, *m.*, palace
pállido, *adj.*, pale
panno, *m.*, cloth; *pl.*, clothes
papà, *m.*, papa, father
paręcchi, *adj. pl.*, several
***parere**, *vn.*, to seem, appear
parlare, *vn.*, to speak, talk
parola, *f.*, word
parte, *f.*, part
particolare, *adj.*, particular
partire, *vn.*, to go away, come
from, proceed from
partito, *m.*, party
passare, *vn.*, to pass, go
passęggiata, *f.*, walk, drive, turn
passęggio, *m.*, walk
patronato, *m.*, patronage; — **sco-**
lastico, protection, assistance
pavimento, *m.*, pavement, paved
floor
pellegrino, *m.*, pilgrim, stranger
penna, *f.*, pen
pensare, *va.*, to think

pensiero, *m.*, thought
pensieroso, *adj.*, thoughtful, pen-
 sive
pentirsi, *v. ref.*, to repent
per, *prep.*, for, by, through, to,
 in order to
perchè, *adv.*, why, because
 **perdere*, *va.*, to lose
perdonare, *va.*, to pardon, for-
 give
perfino, *adv.*, even
pericoloso, *adj.*, perilous, dan-
 gerous
período, *m.*, period
però, *conj.*, therefore, but
persona, *f.*, person
Petrarca, *pr. n.*, Petrarch
pezzo, *m.*, bit, short time
 **piacere*, *vn.*, to please; *m.*, pleas-
 ure; *per* —, please, kindly
piággia, *f.*, shore, strand
 **piangere* (*piagnere*), *vn.*, to weep
piano, *m. and adj.*, plain
piazzetta, *f.*, small square, mar-
 ket-place
picchiare, *va.*, to knock [one
piccino, *adj.*, small; *m.*, little
piccolo, *adj.*, little
piède, *m.*, foot
piegare, *va.*, to bend, bow
pietà, *f.*, piety, pity
pietra, *f.*, stone
pietruzza, *f.*, *dim. of pietra*
prendere, *va.*, to take; — in *pré-*
tito, to borrow
piovoso, *adj.*, rainy
più, *adv. and m.*, more; *i più*,
 majority, the most, most peo-
 ple
poco, *adj. and adv.*, little, few,
 not much
poesía, *f.*, poetry, poem

poeta, *m.*, poet
poi, *adv.*, then
poichè, *adv.*, since, because
político, *m.*, politician
póllice, *m.*, thumb
pólso, *m.*, pulse
pópolo, *m.*, people, nation, race
portare, *va.*, to carry
possibile, *adj.*, possible; *il mio* —,
 my best
 **potere*, *vn.*, to be able; *m.*, power
póvero, *adj.*, poor; *poverino*,
dim., poor, dear
precisamente, *adv.*, exactly; *pre-*
ciso, *adj.*, precise
predicatore, *m.*, preacher
prediletto, *adj.*, preferred, fa-
 vorite
pregare, *va.*, to pray, beg
 **prendere*, *va.*, to take
preparare, *va.*, to prepare
presentare, *va.*, to present; *v.*
ref., *presentarsi*, to appear
préstito, *m.*, borrowing
préstto, *adv.*, quickly
prezioso, *adj.*, precious
prima, *adv.*, before, at first
primo, *adj.*, first
princípio, *m.*, beginning
procurare, *va.*, to procure, help
 to, cause to give
pronto, *adj.*, ready, prompt
pronúncia, *f.*, pronunciation
próprio, *adj.*, proper, peculiar;
adv., really
proseguire, *va.*, to pursue
prossimamente, *adv.*, soon,
 shortly
próssimo, *adj.*, near, next
punta, *f.*, point, end
pupilla, *f.*, pupil of the eye
pure, *conj.*, yet, still also

Q

qualche, *adj.*, some, any, few;

— volta, sometimes

quale, *adj. and pron.*, who,

which, what

quando, *adv.*, when

quanto, *adj.*, how much, how

many, all; — abbiamo del

mese, what day of the month

is it?

quarto, *num. adj.*, fourth

quasi, *adv.*, almost

quattro, *num.*, four

quello, *adj. and dem. pron.*, that,

that one

quercia, *f.*, oak

qui, *adv.*, here

quindici, *num.*, fifteen

quinto, *num. adj.*, fifth

R

raccontare, *va.*, to tell, relate

ragazzo, *m.*, boy

raggio, *m.*, ray, beam

ragione, *f.*, reason

rallegrare, *vn. and ref.*, to re-

joice, be glad

rammentarsi, *v. ref.*, to remem-

ber, recall

rapa, *f.*, turnip

rassomigliare, *vn.*, to resemble

re, *m.*, king

recare, *va.*, to bring, give

recentemente, *adv.*, recently

regalare, *va.*, to present, make a

present of

regno, *m.*, kingdom

regola, *f.*, rule

*rendere, *va.*, to render, give

back, make

restare, *vn.*, to remain, stay

restio, *adj.*, restive

*riaprire, *va.*, to re-open

Ricciardo, *pr. n.*, Richard

ricevere, *va.*, to receive

riconfortarsi, *v. ref.*, to take

courage

riconoscete, *adj.*, grateful

riconoscenza, *f.*, gratitude

*riconoscere, *va.*, to recognize

ricordarsi, *v. ref.*, to remember

*ridere, *vn.*, to laugh; — di, to

laugh at

rigo, *m.*, line

*rincredere, *vn.*, to be sorry

ringraziare, *va.*, to thank

rinunziare, *va.*, to renounce,

give up

riparare, *vn.*, to resort, fly for

shelter

ripigliare, *va.*, to resume, take

again

riportare, *va.*, to bring back

riposarsi, *v. ref.*, to rest

*riscoñtere (riscoñtere), *va.*, to

tremble, shake, to return to

one's senses.

riso, *m.*, rice

rispettoso, *adj.*, respectful

*rispondere, *vn.*, to answer

ritratto, *m.*, picture, portrait

*riuscire, *vn.*, to succeed, turn

out to be, become

rivelare, *va.*, to reveal

riverenza, *f.*, reverence, respect,

salute

riverire, *va.*, to revere, honor,

salute

Roma, *pr. n.*, Rome

rosso, *adj.*, red

S

sabato, *m.*, Saturday

sabbia, *f.*, sand



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership
provides unlimited
access to more than
28,000 volumes of
Christian literature for
\$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

Spagna, *f. pr. n.*, Spain
 spagnuolo, *adj. and pr. n.*, Spanish
 ish
 spalla, *f.*, shoulder
 specialmente, *adv.*, especially
 speranza, *f.*, hope
 sperare, *va.*, to hope
 spesa, *f.*, cost, expense
 spesso, *adv.*, often
 spiegare, *va.*, to explain
 staccarsi, *v. ref.*, to detach, leave
 stanco, *adj.*, tired, fatigued
 *stare, *vn.*, to stand, to be
 stile, *m.*, style
 *stringere (stringere), *va.*, to bind,
 draw together
 studiare, *va.*, to study
 stúdio, *m.*, study
 súbito, *adv.*, suddenly, soon, at
 once
 sublime, *adj.*, sublime
 suo, *poss.*, his, her, hers
 suora, *f.*, sister, nun
 superiore, *adj.*, superior, upper
 svoltata, *f.*, turn, corner (of a
 street)

T

tagliare, *va.*, to cut
 tanto, *adj. and adv.*, so much, so
 many, such a
 tastare, *va.*, to touch, feel
 tata, *m.*, father, daddy (infan-
 tine word)
 tívola, *f.*, table
 te, *pers. pron.*, thee, thou
 tedesco, *adj. and pr. n.*, German
 temperino, *m.*, penknife
 tempo, *m.*, time, weather
 *tenere, *va.*, to have, hold
 terra, *f.*, earth
 terreno, *m.*, ground, land

terzo, *m. and num. adj.*, third
 testa, *f.*, head
 Tévere, *pr. n.*, Tiber
 timore, *m.*, fear, apprehension
 tiratina, *f.*, debate, contention,
 scolding
 toccare, *va.*, to touch
 *togliere (torre), *va.*, to take,
 take away
 tornare, *vn.*, to return, come
 back
 Toscana, *f. pr. n.*, Tuscany
 toscano, *adj. and pr. n.*, Tuscan
 tossire, *vn.*, to cough
 traccia, *f.*, trace
 tragédia, *f.*, tragedy
 tranquillità, *f.*, tranquillity
 tranquillo, *adj.*, tranquil, quiet
 trasferire, *va.*, to transfer
 tratto, *m.*, turn, time; **ad un —**,
 all at once
 traversare, *va.*, to cross
 tre, *num.*, three
 tremare, *vn.*, to tremble
 trenta, *num.*, thirty
 tristo, *adj.*, sad, bad
 triúmviro, *m.*, triumvir
 trovare, *va.*, to find
 tuo, *poss.*, thy, thine
 Torino, *pr. n.*, Turin
 tutto, *adj.*, all

U

uccello, *m.*, bird
 ufficio, *m.*, office, charge
 último, *adj.*, last
 umano, *adj.*, human
 Umberto, *pr. n.*, Humbert
 únghia, *f.*, nail
 uno, *ind. art. and num.*, a, an,
 one
 uomo, *m.*, man

usanza, *f.*, use, custom

***uscire**, *vn.*, to go out, come out

útile, *adj.*, useful

V

vago, *adj.*, vague

***valére**, *vn.*, to suffice, have the power, be worth

vasto, *adj.*, vast

Vaticano, *pr. n.*, the Vatican

vécchio, *adj.*, old, ancient

***vedére**, *va.*, to see

veleno, *m.*, poison

venerdì, *m.*, Friday

***venire**, *vn.*, to come (to be)

vènti, *num.*, twenty

vèro, *adj.*, true, real

vèrso, *prep.*, towards

vestire, *va.*, to dress

via, *f.*, street, way, road

via, *adv.*, more, much more, away

viaggiare, *vn.*, to travel, journey

viaggiatore, *m.*, traveler

viággio, *m.*, journey, fare un —, to take a trip

vicino, *adj. and prep.*, near, next

violèntza, *f.*, violence

vísita, *f.*, visit

viso, *m.*, face

vispo, *adj.*, merry, lively

vista, *f.*, sight; a prima —, at (first) sight

vita, *f.*, life

vivacità, *f.*, vivacity

vöce, *f.*, voice

vóglia, *f.*, will, desire

volentièri, *adv.*, willingly, gladly

vöлта, *f.*, turn, time; alle völte, at times, sometimes

volume, *m.*, volume

vöstro, *poss.*, your, yours

Z

zia, *f.*, aunt

zio, *m.*, uncle

A

abhor, *va.*, aborrire
 able, to be —, *vn.*, potére
 about, *prep.*, circa di
 absence, assenza, *f.*
 absolute, *adj.*, assoluto
 accompany, *va.*, accòmpagnare
 ache, dolére, *vn.*
 afraid, to be —, temére, *va.*, aver
 paura
 after, *prep.*, dopo
 afternoon, dopopranzo, *m.*
 afterwards, *adv.*, indi, più tardi
 ago, an hour —, un' ora fa
 air, ária, *f.*
 all, *adj.*, tutto
 almost, *adv.*, quasi
 alone, *adj.*, solo
 aloud, *adv.*, ad alta voce
 Alps, *pr. n.*, le Alpe
 also, *conj.*, anche
 always, *adv.*, sempre
 among, *prep.*, da
 amphitheater, anfiteatro, *m.*
 amuse, divertire, trattenére, *va.*
 ancient, *adj.*, antico
 and, *conj.*, e
 anecdote, anéddoto, *m.*
 anniversary. anniversário, *m.*
 another, *adj. and n.*, altro, un
 altro
 anxiety, pena; *f.*
 appear, *parére, *vn.*
 apply, applicar, *va.*; applicarsi,
 ref.

approach, avvicinarsi, *v. ref.*
 arm, bráccio, *m.*
 arms (= weapons), le armi, *f. pl.*
 arrival, arrivo, *m.*
 arrive, arrivare, *vn.*
 as, *adv.*, siccome
 ascend, *ascendere, *salire, *va.*
 ask, domandare, *va.*
 assure, assicurare, *va.*
 aunt, zia, *f.*
 author, autore, *m.*

B

baby, bambino, *m.*
 back, dósso, *m.*
 bank, sponda, riva, *f.*
 be, *éssere, *vn.*; to — hungry,
 thirsty, hot, cold, aver fame,
 sete, caldo, freddo; to — ten
 years old, aver dieci anni;
 how are you (= how do you
 do), come sta
 bear, portare, sopportare, *va.*
 beast, béstia, *f.*
 beat (= to give blows), báttere;
 (= to conquer), vincere, *va.*
 beautiful, bello, *adj.*
 because, *conj.*, perchè
 become, *farsi, *v. ref.*
 bed, letto, *m.*
 bee, ape, *f.*
 begin, cominciare, *va.*; *metter-
 si a, *v. ref.*
 being, éssere, *m.*
 belong, *appartenére, *vn.*



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



demand, **domanda**, *f.*; to —, **domandare**, *va.*

departure, **partenza**, *f.*

dependence, **dipendenza**, *f.*

deserve, **meritare**, *va.*

desolate, *adj.*, **deserto**

destroy, ***distruggere**, *va.*

die, ***morire**, *vn.*

difficult, *adj.*, **difficile**

difficulty, **difficoltà**, *f.*; with —, **affannosamente**, *adv.*

director, **direttore**, *m.*

directress, **direttrice**, *f.*

do, ***fare**, *va.*

doctor, **médico**, *m.*

dog, **cane**, *m.*

door, **porta**, *f.*

dry, *adj.*, **árido**

duke, **duca**, *m.*

during, *prep.*, **durante**, **per**

dwell, **dimorare**, *vn.*

E

each, *pron.*, **ciascuno**

edifice, **edificazione**, *f.*

Egyptian, *adj. and pr. n.*, **egiziano**

either, *conj.*; nor —, **neppure**, **nemmeno**

empire, **impero**, *m.*

end, **fondo**, *m.*

enemy, **nemico**, **inimico**, *m.*

enough, *adv.*, **abbastanza**

enrich, **arrichire**, *va.*

enter, **entrare**, *vn.*

entitle, **intitolare**, *va.*

Etruscan, *adj. and pr. n.*, **etrusco**

Europe, **Europa**, *f. pr. n.*

evening, **sera**, *f.*

ever, *adv.*, **mai**

every, *adj. and pron.*, **ogni**, **ognuno**, **ciascuno**

excellence, **eccellenza**, *f.*

exception, **eccezione**, *f.*

exclaim, **esclamare**, *va.*

excuse, **scusare**, *va.*

explain, **spiegare**, *va.*

eye, **occhio**, *m.*

F

face, **faccia**, *f.*; **viso**, *m.*

fact, **fatto**, *m.*

faith, **fedè**, *f.*

faithful, *adj.*, **fedele**

fall, ***cadere**, *vn.*; **caduta**, *f.*

familiar, *adj. and n.*, **familiare**

family, **famiglia**, *f.*

far, *adj. and adv.*, **lontano**; *adv.*, **lunge**

fast, *adv.*, **presto**, **sollecitamente**

father, **padre**, *m.*

feel, **sentire**, **tastare**, *va.*

feign, ***fingere**, *vn.*

few, *adj. and n.*, **qualche**; **pochi**, *m.*, **pochi**, *f.*

find, **trovare**, *va.*

finger, **dito**, *m.*

finish, **finire**, *va.*

first, *adj.*, **primo**; *adv.*, **prima**

five, **cinque**, *num.*

fixedly, *adv.*, **fissamente**

flight (of stairs), **branco**, *m.*

floor, **pavimento**, *m.*

Florence, **Firenze**, *pr. n.*

Florentine, *adj. and pr. n.*, **fiorentino**

flower, **fiore**, *m.*

follow, ***seguire**, **seguire**, *va.*

foolish, *adj.*, **inconsiderato**

foot, **piède**, *m.*

for, *prep.*, **per**; *conj.*, **põichè**

formerly, *adv.*, **altre volte**, *f. pl.*

fortunate, *adj.*, **fortunato**

found, *fondare, va.*
 fourth, *adj.*, quarto
 free, *liberare, va.*
 French, *adj. and pr. n.*, francese
 friend, *amico, m.*

G

gain, *acquistare, va.*
 game, *giuoco, m.*
 gate, *porta, f.*
 gaze, to — at, *guardare, va.*
 generally, *adv.*, generalmente
 gentleman, *signore, m.*
 German, *adj. and pr. n.*, tedesco
 Germany, *Germánia, f. pr. n.*
 girl, *ragazza, f.*
 give, **dare, va.*
 glad, *adj.*, contento
 gladly, *adv.*, volentieri
 go, **andare, vn.*; to — away, *andarsene, ref.*; to — out, **uscire, vn.*
 gold, *oro, m.*
 golden, *adj.*, d'oro, *m.*
 good, *adj.*, buono, *dabbene*
 (placed after noun); — day, *buon giorno*; — by, *addio*; to do — to, *far bene a*
 governor, *governatore, m.*
 grace, *grázia, f.*
 grand, *adj.*, grande; — father, *nonno, m.*; — son, *nipote, m.*
 grass, *erba, f.*
 gratitude, *riconoscenza, f.*
 great, *adj.*, grande; greater, *maggiore*; very great, *sommo*
 greatness, *grandezza, f.*
 Greece, *Grécia, f. pr. n.*
 green, *adj.*, verde
 ground, *terreno, m.*
 guide, *guidare, va.*

H

half, *adj.*, mezzo
 hand, *mano, f.*
 happen, **accadere, vn.*
 happy, *adj.*, felice
 hat, *cappello, m.*
 have, **avere, va.*
 head, *capo, m.*
 hear, **udire, sentire, va.*
 heart, *cuore, m.*
 heat, *calore, m.*
 heel, *tacco, m.*
 hemisphere, *emisfero, m.*
 Henry, *Enrico, pr. n.*
 here, *adv.*, qui, quà; — is, *ecco*
 his, *poss.*, suo
 history, *stória, f.*
 home, *casa, f.*
 honorable, *adj.*, onorabile, onorevole
 hope, *sperare, va.*; *speranza, f.*
 horse, *cavallo, m.*
 hot, *adj.*, caldo
 house, *casa, f.*; at the — of, *da, prep.*
 how, *adv.*, come, quanto
 however, *adv.*, benchè, però
 human, *adj.*, umano

I

if, *conj.*, se; as —, *come se*
 ill, *adj.*, malato; *dim.*, somewhat ill, sickly, *malatuccio*
 indeed, *adv. and interj.*, davvero
 index (finger), *indice, m.*
 inhabitant, *abitante, m.*
 ink-well, *calamáio, m.*
 insect, *insetto, m.*
 inspire, *inspirare, va.*
 instinct, *istinto, m.*
 interesting, *adj.*, interessante
 interrogate, *interrogare, va.*

intimate, *adj.*, íntimo
invader, invasore, *m.*
irregular, *adj.*, irregolare
Italy, Itália, *f. pr. n.*

J

John, Giovanni, *pr. n.*
journey, viággio, *m.*
jump, saltare, *vn.*

K

keep, conservare, *va.*
kindly, *adj.*, buono
king, re, *m.*
kingdom, regno, *m.*
kiss, baciare; — repeatedly,
sbacchiucare, *va.*
knock, picchiare, *va.*
know, — by the senses, *conósce-
re; = recognize, *riconós cere;
— by the mind, *sapére

L

lack, mancare, *vn.*
lady, signora, *f.*
land, terreno, *m.*
language, lingua, *f.*
last, *adj.*, último, scorso; at —,
adv., finalmente
laugh, *rídere, *vn.*
lay, *porre, *va.*
learn, imparare, *va.*
leave, lasciare, *va.*; to take —,
accomiatarsi, *ref.*
lecture, fare un discorso, parlare,
vn.
left, *adj.*, sinistro
leg, gamba, *f.*
lesson, lezione, *f.*
letter, lettera, *f.*
lie, — down, *giacére, *vn.*
life, vita, *f.*

like, *adv.*, come
like (= to love), amare, *va.*;
piacere, *vn.*
lion, leone, *m.*
lip, labbro, *m.*
literature, letteratura, *f.*
little, *adj.*, piccolo, piccino; *adv.*
and *adj.*, poco
lively, *adj.*, vispo
long, *adj.*, lungo
look, — at, guardare, *va.*; to —
for, cercare, *va.*
loosen, allentare, *va.*
lordship, signoría, *f.*
lose, *pérdere, *va.*
love, amore, *m.*
love, amare, *va.*
lower, abbassare, *va.*
Lydia, Lídia, *f. pr. n.*

M

mad, *adj.*, matto
make, *fare, *va.*
man, uomo, *m.*
manage, fare in modo di
manner, modo, *m.*
many, *adj. and n.*, molti, *m.*;
molte, *f.*; so many, tanti, — e
master, maestro, padrone, *m.*
matter, cosa, *f.*; to —, impor-
tare, *vn.*
may, mággio, *m.*
me, *pers. pron.*, me, mi
mean, *inténdere, *va.*
medicine, medicina, *f.*, medici-
nale, *m.*
meet, incontrare, *va.*
menagerie, serráglio, *m.*
merchant, mercante, *m.*
mere, *adj.*, puro, sémplíce
mild, to grow —, ammansirsi. *v.*
ref.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books' Full Membership provides unlimited access to more than 28,000 volumes of Christian literature for \$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

part, *parte*, *f.*
 pass, *passare*, *vn.*
 peace, *pace*, *f.*
 pen, *penna*, *f.*
 pencil, *lapis*, *m.*, *matita*, *f.*
 people, *pópolo*, *m.*, *gente*, *f.*
 period, *período*, *m.*
 picture, *pittura*, *f.*, *ritratto*, *m.*,
immáGINE, *f.*
 piety, *pietà*, *f.*
 plain, *pianura*, *f.*
 play, *giocare* (*giuocare*), *va.*
 pleasant, to be —, *fare bene*
 please, **piacére*, *vn.*
 pleasing, *adj.*, *piacévole*
 pleasure, *piacére*, *m.*
 plump, *adj.*, *grassotto*
 poet, *poeta*, *m.*
 poison, *veleno*, *m.*
 politician, *político*, *m.*
 poor, *adj.*, *póvero*
 portrait, *ritratto*, *m.*
 power, *potére*, *m.*
 praise, *lodare*, *va.*
 preacher, *predicatore*, *m.*
 precious, *adj.*, *prezioso*
 present, *regalo*, *dono*, *m.*; to
 make a —, *fare un regalo*, *un*
dono
 present, *presentare*, *va.*
 press, **stringere*, *va.*
 profound, *adj.*, *profondo*
 pronunciation, *pronúncia*, *f.*
 proper, *adj.*, *próprio*
 proud, *adj.*, *superbo*, *contento*
 province, *província*, *f.*
 pulse, *polso*, *m.*
 pupil, *scolare*, *m.*

Q

queen, *regina*, *f.*
 quickly, *adv.*, *súbito*
 quiet, *adj.*, *tranquillo*

R

“r” (letter of the alphabet), *erre*,
f.
 race, *gente*, *f.*
 ragged, *adj.*, *stracciato*
 raise, *levare*, *va.*
 range, *allungarsi*, *v. ref.*
 rascal, *briccone*, *furfante*, *m.*
 ray, *rággio*, *m.*
 read, **leggere*, *va.*
 reading, *lettura*, *f.*
 ready, *adj.*, *pronto*
 really, *adv.*, *davvero*
 reason, *ragione*, *f.*
 recall, *ricordarsi*, *v. ref.*
 recently, *adv.*, *recentemente*
 recognize, **riconoscere*, *va.*
 rector, *párroco*, *m.*
 red, *adj.*, *rosso*
 reef, *scóglio*, *m.*
 regain, *riacquistare*, *va.*
 relate, *raccontare*, *va.*
 relieve, *levar* (*uno*) *di pena*
 remain, **stare*, *restare*, *vn.*
 remark, *osservare*, *va.*
 remember, *ricordarsi*, *vn.*
 repeat, *ripétere*, *va.*
 reply, **rispondere*, *vn.*
 republic, *república*, *f.*
 respectful, *adj.*, *rispettoso*
 rest, *riposarsi*, *v. ref.*
 restive, *adj.*, *restio*
 resume, *ripigliare*, *va.*
 right, *diritto*, *m.*
 right, *adj.*, *destro*; *adv.*, *a destra*
 ring-finger, *dito anulare*, *anulare*,
m.
 rise, *levarsi*, *v. ref.*
 river, *fiume*, *m.*
 road, *strada*, *via*, *f.*
 rosy, *adj.*, *róseo*

row, *fila*, *f.*

rule, *régola*, *f.*; (=dominion)

signoría, *f.*

run **córrere*; — away, *scappare*,
vn.

S

sad, *adj.*, *triste*

safely, *adv.*, *sicuramente*

salute, *salutare*, *va.*

same, *adj.*, *stesso*

sand, *sábbia*, *f.*

sandy, *adj.*, *sabbioso*

Saturday, *sábato*, *m.*

say, **dire*, *va.*

school, *scuola*, *f.*

scolding, *tiratina*, *f.*

scorching, *adj.*, *cocente*

sea, *mare*, *m.*

seashore, *spiággia*, *f.*

seat, *sédia*, *f.*

second, *adj.*, *secondo*

see, **vedére*, *va.*

seek, *cercare*, *va.*

seem, **parére*, *sembrare*, *vn.*

September, *settembre*, *m.*

series, *série*, *f.*

shake the head, *crollare il capo*

sharp, *adj.*, *acuto*

she, *pron.*, *essa*

ship, *nave*, *f.*

shipwreck, to make —, *naufra-
gare*, *vn.*

shoe, *scarpa*, *f.*

shoulder, *spalla*, *f.*

show, *mostrare*, *va.*

sick, *adj. and m.*, *malato*

side, *lato*, *m.*

sigh, *sospiro*, *m.*

sight, *vista*, *f.*

silent, to be —, **tacére*, *vn.*

Simon, *pr. n.*, *Simone*

since, *conj.*, *poichè*

singular, *singolare*, *m.*

sink, **immérgersi*, *v. ref.*

sister, *sorella*; =nun, *suora*, *f.*

sit (down), *accomodarsi*, *v. ref.*

six, *num.*, *sei*

slate, *lavagna*, *f.*

sleep, *sonno*, *m.*

sleepy, to be —, *aver sonno*

slowly, *adv.*, *lentamente*

small, *adj.*, *piccolo*

so, *adv.*, *così*; — that, *affinchè*

sob, *singhiozzare*, *vn.*

soldier, *soldato*, *m.*

some, *pron.*, *alcuni*

something, *qualche cosa*, *f.*

sometime, — or other, *un giorno
o l' altro*

sometimes, *adv.*, *qualche volta*

soon, *adv.*, *súbito*

sorry, to be —, **rincréscere*, *vn.*

Spanish, *adj. and pr. n.*, *spa-
gnaolo*

speak, *parlare*, *vn.*

spite, in —, *malgrado*

sponge, *spugna*, *f.*

square, =park, *piazza*, *f.*

stair, *scala*, *f.*

stammer, *balbettare*, *vn.*

stare, *guardar fisso*

staring, *adj.*, *fisso*

statue, *státua*, *f.*

statute, *statuto*, *m.*

stay, **stare*, *restare*, *vn.*

stick, *bastone*, *m.*

stone, *sasso*, *m.*, *pietra*, *f.*

stop, *fermarsi*, *v. ref.*

stream, *ruscello*, *m.*

street, *strada*, *f.*

street-corner, *svóitata*, *f.*

strong, *adj.*, *forte*

study, *studiare*, *va.*, *stúdio*, *m.*

stupid, *adj.*, *sciocco*

style, stile, *m.*
 subject, soggetto, *m.*
 sublime, *adj.*, sublime
 such, *adj. and adv.*, tanto
 suffer, *soffrire, *va.*, patire, *vn.*
 sun, sole, *m.*; —rise, il levare del
 sole
 superior, *adj.*, superiore
 swear, giurare, *vn.*
 swell, gonfiare, *vn.*
 swollen, *adj.*, gonfio

T

table, tavola, *f.*
 take, *prendere, *togliere, *va.*;
 to — a walk, fare una pas-
 seggiata
 teach, insegnare, *va.*
 teacher, maestro, *m.*, maestra, *f.*
 tear, lágrima, *f.*; to burst into
 tears, scoppiare in lágrime
 tell, raccontare, narrare, *va.*
 than, *adv.*, di, che
 thank, ringraziare, *va.*
 thanks, grázie, *f. pl.*
 that, *pr. and dem. adj.*, quel,
 quello, quel tale; — is, cioè
 that, *rel.*, che
 their, *poss.*, loro
 then, *adv.*, allora, poi; *conj.*,
 dunque
 there, *adv.*, là, lì; — is, — are,
 vi è, vi sono
 thin, *adj.*, magro
 thing, cosa, *f.*
 think, pensare, *vn.*; credere, *va.*
 third, *adj.*, terzo
 thirst, sete, *f.*
 this, *dem.*, questo
 thought, pensiero, *m.*
 three, *num.*, tre
 through, *prep.*, per

throw, gettare, buttare, *va.*
 thumb, póllice, *m.*
 thus, *adv.*, così
 Tiber, Tévere, *m.*
 time, tempo, *m.*, volta, *f.*
 tired, *adj.*, stanco
 to-morrow, *adv.*, domani
 too, *adv.*, anche
 toss, agitare, *va.*
 towards, *prep.*, verso
 trace, traccia, *f.*
 tragedy, tragédia, *f.*
 tranquillity, tranquillità, *f.*
 travel, viaggiare, *vn.*, viaggio, *m.*
 traveller, viaggiatore, *m.*
 tree, álbero, *m.*
 trio, trio, *m.*
 triumvir, triúmviro, *m.*
 trouble, *affliggere, affannare, *va.*
 true, *adj.*, vero
 truly, *adv.*, davvero
 Turin, *pr. n.*, Torino
 turn, *vólgere, *va.*
 Tuscan, *adj. and pr. n.*, toscano
 two, *num.*, due

U

understand, capire, *va.*
 unexpectedly, improvvisamente
 unfortunate, *adj.*, sfortunato;
 —ly, *adv.*, sfortunatamente
 unite, unire, *va.*
 until, *prep.*, fino a
 us, *pron. pers.*, noi
 usually, *adv.*, ordinariamente

V

verse, verso, *m.*
 very, *adv.*, molto; *adj.*, stesso
 vex, contrariare, *va.*
 Victor Emanuel, *pr. n.*, Vittório
 Emmanuèle



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



INDEX.

 Heavy-faced figures refer to paragraphs.

A

a, masculine noun pl., p. 38, n. 1; feminines in, 50, 56; pl. of masc. o nouns, 63, 64; sign of feminine sing., 42, 50; use of prep., 211; value of, 5; **a**, **ad**, 36 (a), p. 123, n. 3.

ability, idea of, rendered by *essere buono a*, p. 64, Rem.

abstract nouns, 44 (1), 51 (b), (1); 50 (3), n. 3.

accent, 31, 32, 33, 34, 35; falling on stem of irr. verb, 176; rôle of, in irr. vbs., p. 117, n. 1.

accentuation, 30; of words to which suffix added, p. 112, n. 4; of verbal forms compounded with conj. pron., p. 76, n. 2.

acute accent, use of, 33.

ad for **a**, 36 (a).

addosso, not to be translated, p. 124, n. 2.

adjective, 44 (6); agreement of, 108; forms of, 109; used as n., 109, Rem. 1; as pron., 109, Rem. 2; in -lle, formation adv. from, p. 157, n. 3; irr., 118; place of, 58, 129, 130, 131, 132; preceded by **a**,

211 (4); by **di**, 212 (3); by **da**, 213; used as adv., 238 (a), p. 158, n. 1.

adverbs, classes of, 236; of manner, 237, 238, 239, 240; of place, 241, 242, 243; of degree and comparison, 121, 122, 125, 244; of affirmation and negation, 245, 246; of time, 247; comparison of, 248, 249; position of, 250; formation of, of manner, 237, 238, 239; from -issimo and -errimo adj., 249 (a); adj. sometimes, 128; form absolute superlative, p. 92, n. 3; modification of, 163, p. 111, n. 1.

ai in dates, p. 168, n. 1.

Alessandro magno, 44 (2), ex. (c) and n. 1.

Alpe, 51 (1), Rem.

altri added to **noi**, **voi**, 92 (b).

altrimenti, 237 (b).

ambiguity of possessive avoided, 138.

analytical and synthetic comparison, 120.

andare used to express progressive action, 81 (d) (1); to express duty, 81 (1), (2).

andarsene, 107.

-ando, pres. part. in, 112.
-ante, pres. part. in, 111; **-ante** for **-ando** in pres. part., p. 49, n. 1; **-ante**, **-ente**, part. in, becomes noun, p. 146, n. 1.
antimeridiano, A.M. (*ante meridiem*), 256 (b).
 apposition, nouns in, 49 (2).
arci-, 164.
 article, repetition of, 46; def., with superlative, 122 (a); indef., omitted in exclamation, 157; omitted with **cento**, **mille**, etc., 251 (c); in numerical titles, 257.
 assimilation, p. 25, Rem. 2 (c).
-astro, with adj. of color, p. 112, n. 3.
audácie, p. 44, n. 2.
 augmentative suffixes, 167.
 auxiliary verbs, 74; tables of, pp. 57, 58; use of, 76, 77; synopsis, 76, 77, 77 (a) and (b), 78, 79, 80; modal aux., **dovére**, **potére**, **volére**, **fare**, **sapére**, as, 82, 83; **lasciare** as, 83; modal auxs., 214; auxiliary reckoned as vb., 235 (a).
avére, 74; in description, 44 (7); verbs compounding with, 78, 79 (a), 80; translating English "to be", in idioms, 84; **avére da**, 84 (b); irr. of, 180 (3); past part. with, 113 (b), p. 84, n. 1; to denote age, 258.

B

b, value of, 12.
 back vowels, 6.
 "both", rendering of, 251 (e), 254, p. 109, n. 4.
bravo, interj., as adj., p. 170, n. 4.

C

c, value of, 14, 15 (a), 16; **cc**, 15, Rem.; **c** before suffix, 124, 171 (a).
-ca, adj. in, 116 (2); masculines in, 59; feminines in, 60.
 capitals, use of, 37.
 cardinal numerals, 251; employed in speaking of days of month, 255 (c).
-care, vbs. ending in, 69 (1).
Carlo magno, 44 (2), Ex. (c) and n. 1.
çen for **cento**, 251 (f).
cento, without art., 49 (4), 251 (c).
-cere, vbs. in, 70 (1).
ch, value of, 16.
 characteristic vowels of reg. vbs. 67, 68, p. 51, n. 2; p. 52, n. 1.
che, rel., 145, 146; as neuter, 146 (a); as noun, p. 104, n. 1; inter., 154; in comparison, 126 (b), p. 94, n. 1; **che non**, 127; to introduce question implying doubt, p. 170, n. 2.
chi, rel., 145, 148; **chi-chi**, 148 (a); inter., 153.
-chiare vbs., 69 (3).
ci, adv. use and place of, 242, 243.
-ciare vbs., 69 (2).
ciò, 140.
 circumflex accent, use of, 34.
cl instead of **ch** in learned words, 19 (c); exception, p. 11.
 close e, 5, 8; representing Latin **ē** and **ī**, 8; rules for, 9.
 close o, 5, 8; representing Latin **ō** and **ū**, 8; rules for, 10, 11.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books'
Full Membership
provides unlimited
access to more than
28,000 volumes of
Christian literature for
\$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

126 (a), p. 95, Rem., 212 (5);
in adv. expression, 212 (7).
diacritic signs, 35.
-dico, adj. in, 124 (a).
diminutives, art. used with, 45
(2), Rem.
diminutive suffixes, 166.
diphthongs, 28.
dire, irr. of, 178 (b), 180 (1), (3).
disjunctive pers. pron, 85; ta-
ble of, 86; use of, 85, 87, 88,
89, 90, 91, 92, 93, 95; dis-
junctive forms used where
two objects, 98 (5).
doubling of initial cons. in conj.
pron., 99 (b) and n.
dropping of vowel, 99 (a); be-
fore suffixes, 171.
dappoco, 118 (e).

E

e, value of, 5, 9; c and g before,
15 (a), (b); gender of nouns
ending in, 51; pl. of a (fem.)
nouns in, 56; sign of fem. pl.,
42, 50; of masc. pl., 63, 64.
ed for e, 36 (a).
ei = egli, p. 66, n. 3.
egli, ella used of both persons
and things, p. 67, n. 2.
eglino seldom used in modern
Italian, p. 66, n. 5.
elision, 36, p. 73, n. 3; of anche,
che, nemmeno, neppure, p.
142, n. 2.
Ella, Lei = "you", 91.
elleno seldom used in modern
Italian, p. 66, n. 5.
emotion, subjunctive of, 232 (2).
endearment, suffixes of, 168.
-ente, for endo in pres part., p.
49, n. 1; pres. part. in, 111.

-errimo, adj. in, 124.
essere, conj. of, 74; as aux. of
refl. vbs., 78, 103, 114; irr. of,
173, 178 (b), 179, 180; denot-
ing duration of time, 259; in
expressions of time of day,
83, Rem. 1; past part. with,
113 (a), 114; use of, 77, Rem.
1 (p. 60); vbs. compounding
with, 78, 79, 80; vbs. used in-
stead of, 81.
esso, essa, used of both persons
and things, p. 67, n. 2; used
redundantly with meco, etc.,
92 (a).
euphony in placing adj., 131; in
suffixes, 171 (b).
-evole, adj. in, 124 (a).

F

f, value of, 12; for ph in words
of Greek origin, p. 26, Rem.
3 (b).
fare, conj. pron. with, 99 (p. 77),
Rem. (d); irr. of, 180 (1), (2),
(3); use of, 82, 83; denoting
duration of time, 259.
feminine, formation of, 54; nouns
masc. in ending, 30 (2) (a).
-fico, adj. in, 124 (a).
fino used with a, da, and in, 184
and n.
fractions, 252 (b).
front vowels, 6.
fu, 118 (d).
future, formed from inf., 175, p.
116, n. 6; use of, 229.

G

g, value of, 14, 15 (b), 16;
doubled, 15, Rem.; before
suffix, 124, 171 (a).

-ga, adj. in, 116 (2).

H

h, omission of, p. 26, Rem. 2 (d); in -care and -gare vbs., 69; value of, 16, 21, 27, 59.

hundreds, higher numbers not counted by, 251 (d).

I

i, c before, 15 (a); for y in words of Greek origin, p. 26, Rem. 3 (a); g before, 15 (b); gender of nouns ending in, 51; pl. of nouns ending in, 57; prefixed before impure s, p. 123, n. 4; sign of masculine plural, 42, 50; to indicate pronunciation, 61, 69 (2), 70; value of, 5, 22.

-iare vbs., 69 (4).

il for lo, p. 72, n. 1.

ille, forms from, p. 102, n. 3.

il quale, 145; distinguished from cui, 147 (a).

impari, 118 (a).

imperative, force of future, 229 (3); irr., 180 (3); use of, 231.

imperfect tense, 73; imperf. ind. for conditional, 230 (a).

impersonal vbs., 181; conj. pron. with, 99, Rem. (a) (p. 76).

in, p. 32, Ex. (a); denoting end of motion, 204 (2) and n.; with credere, p. 142, n. 1.

inchoatives, Latin, p. 50, n. 6.

indefinite article, forms of, 41; syntax of, 49.

indefinites, 158, 159, 160, 161, 162; phrases used as, 160; subjunctive with, p. 110, n. 2.

infinitive, conj. pron. with, 99, Rem. (pp. 76, 77); for negative imperative, p. 51, n. 4; dependent, preceded by a, 211 (2), (3); by di, 212 (1); without prep., 214; used as noun, art. with, 44 (9); English, rendered by subj., 221 (e); 232 (1); rendering Eng. past part., 223.

insieme used with con and with a, 184 (a).

interjections, 261.

interrogatives, forms of, 152; used in exclamations, 157.

interrogative vb., 72.

-ire vbs., taking either termination, 71 (b), 71 (c); that do not take -isco forms, 71 (a).

-io, plural of nouns in, 55, Rem. 2, p. 44, n. 1; of adj. in, 117.

irregular verbs, stem of, 173; models of, 177 (a), (b); construction of, 179.

-isco endings, 71.

-issimo, adj. in, 124.

iste, forms pron., p. 102, n. 3.

"it," translation of, 94 and n.

J

j, semi-consonant, table p. 2, p. 6, n. 1; value of, 23, p. 44, n. 1.

K

k, not occurring in Italian alphabet, 2; pronunciation of, 3 (a).

L

l, value of, 12.

lasciare, conj. pron. with, 99, Rem. (e) (p. 77).

Latin nouns retain gender, p. 38, n. 1.
 letters of alphabet, 3.
 li for il in dates, p. 27, n. 2, p. 168, n. 1.
 lo, neuter, p. 73, n. 5.
 locutions, adverbial, 248; conjunctive, 218.
 loro, art. with, 135 (a); conj., p. 72, n. 4.

M

m, value of, 12.
 madama, p. 31, n. 2.
 madamigella, p. 31; n. 2.
 mago, pl. of, p. 45, Rem. (1).
 manco in comparison, 125 and n. 1.
 mano, 50 (2), (a), 55, Rem. (1).
 Maria Vêrgine, 44 (2), Ex. (c) and n. 2.
 masculine nouns feminine in ending, 50 (2) (b).
 mē, Lat., two developments of, p. 65, n. 1.
 meco, 92.
 meglio, p. 91, n. 1; as adj. noun, p. 162, n. 1.
 -mente as adv. suffix, 237.
 mille without art., 49 (4), 251 (c).
 molto, 128.
 monosyllables, by contraction, p. 6, n. 3; pl. of, 57.
 multiplicatives, 253.

N

n, value of, 12, 17.
 names of cities, of continents, of countries, of lakes, of rivers, of seas, 44 (5); of days of

week, def. art. with, 44 (11) (b); of months, 44 (12).
 ne for ci, p. 72, n. 2.
 near relatives, names of, 45 (2).
 neuters; Latin, p. 38, n. 1.
 ng, value of, 17.
 no for non, 246 (a).
 "nobody," rendering of, 161.
 non, place of, 246 (b); without negative value, 127, 246 (c).
 non è vero, p. 70, n. 3.
 nosco, p. 69, n. 2.
 "nothing," rendering of, 161.
 nouns preceded by a, 211 (5); by di, 212 (a); in apposition preceded by di, 212 (6).
 number, 39, 42, 55, 56, 57, 58, 59, 60, 61, 62, 63, 64, 65; nouns of, 251 (b).
 numerals, 44 (10), 251-261.
 numerical idioms, 260.

O

o, value of, 5, 8; diphthongized in verbal forms, 69 (5), 70 (3); dropped in questo and cotesto, 141; for a in imperf., p. 50, n. 4; open o, 5, 8; representing Latin o and au, 8; in monosyllables, 11; sign of masculine singular, 42, 50.
 objective forms used for subjective, 95.
 od for o, 36 (a).
 ogni, 118 (a), 162.
 onde, 145, 149; derivation of, p. 107, n. 1.
 -one, 167, 172 (a).
 -one, -oni as adv. suffix, 239.
 open o, 5, 8.
 order of two conj. pron., 100.



THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

HISTORY

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access
\$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



provincia, p. 44, n. 2.
 pseudonimo, takes *lo*, p. 27, n. 3.
 purity of Italian vowels, p. 4,
 n. 1.

Q

q, value of, 12, p. 8, n. 3.
 qualche, 118 (b), p. 89, n. 2, 162.
 qualcosa, gender of, 50 (2) (b).
 quale, 155.
 quanto, 121, 128, 156.
 quasimente, 237 (b).
 quegli, 139 (1), (2); = "the former", 143.
 quello, inflection of, 141; use of,
 142; = "the former", 143.
 questi = "the latter", 143.
 questo, use of, 142, 143.

R

reciprocal vbs., 103, Rem.; past
 part. with, 114.
 recluta, 50 (1), Exc.
 redundant construction, 92 (a),
 95 (a), 98.
 reflexive vbs., compound with
éssere, 78, 103, 114; past part.
 with, 114; possessive with,
 137 (2); synopsis of, 102, 106.
 relative, indefinite, subj. after,
 232 (4) (a).
 relative clause, rendered by inf.,
 224; subj. in, 232 (4).
 relatives, 145-151; always ex-
 pressed in Italian, 150.
 repetition of adv. to form super-
 lative, 249 (c).
 rimanére used instead of *éssere*
 to form passive, 81 (c).

S

s, 19; impure, 36 (b), p. 27, n. 1;
 adj. before, 115 (b).
 santo, forms of, 115.
 sapére, irr. of, 178 (b), 180 (3).
 sc, value of, 20, 21.
 -sciare, vbs., 69 (2).
 se, 93.
 seço, 92 and n.
 sentinella, 50 (1), Exc.
 sentire, conj. pron. with, 99,
 Rem. (e) (p. 77).
 sestina not a collective, p. 167,
 n. 3.
 sequence of tenses, 234, 235.
 si, constructions with, 104,
 105.
 síeno for síano, p. 57, n. 1.
 sopra-, 164.
 sopra-, 164.
 spia, 50 (1), Exc.
 stare, irr. of, 180 (1), (2); used
 to express progressive action,
 81 (a).
 stare per, 81 (a), p. 141, n. 1.
 stem, of reg. vbs., 68; of irr.
 vbs., 173, 178, p. 116, n. 2;
 stressed stem, 176, 178 (d).
 stra-, 164.
 strong vbs., p. 116, n. 1.
 su, 182 (b); followed by per, 187
 (b).
 subj. imperf. of command, 231
 (a), 232.
 subj. pres. for imperative, p. 51,
 n. 5.
 subj., use of, 232, 233.
 subordinate clause, subj. in, 232
 (1).
 suffixes, 163, 165-172; loss of
 meaning in, 170; with adv.,

163, p. 111, n. 1, 249 (a) and (b).

superlative, subj. after, 232 (3).

sur for su, 36 (a).

surnames, 44 (3).

syllabication, 29.

synthetic forms, 123, 124.

T

t, value of, 13.

tanto, 128.

tęco, 92.

‘there is’, rendering of, 83, Rem. 2.

titles, 44 (2), 135 (b).

“to”, rendering of, 211 (2), 212 (1), 214, 215.

tocco, for l’una, 256 (a).

triphthongs, 28.

troppo, 128.

truncation, 36.

tu, use of, 91.

two forms same word, p. 26, Rem. (4).

U

u, 5; accented, followed by a vowel, p. 10, n. 1; consonantal, 18; Eng. replaced by o, p. 25, Rem. 2 (b); nouns ending in, 50 (3).

udire, conj. pron. with, 99, Rem. (e) (p. 77).

uncertainty expressed by conditional, 230 (2).

unde, form from, p. 107, n. 1.

uno, -a, 251 (a); noun modified by ventuno, trentuno, etc., 251 (a).

V

v, 12; of imperf. dropped, p. 50, n. 5.

vedere, conj. pron. with, 99, Rem. (e) (p. 77).

venire used instead of essere to form passive, 81 (b).

verbal noun, 221, 222.

verbs, reg. conjugation of, 67; table of, p. 49; of second conj., p. 54, n. 1 and 2.

vi, adv. place and use of, 242, 243.

vocative, 44 (2), Exc. (a), 45 (1).

voi, use of, 91.

voiced consonants, p. 1.

voiced s, 19.

voiceless consonants, p. 1.

voiceless s, 19.

volere, irr. of, 180 (3).

vosco, p. 69, n. 2.

vowel, Italian nouns end in, p. 25, Rem. (1), p. 39, n. 5.

vowel, su before, 36 (a), p. 123, n. 5.

vowels, classification of, 1; table, p. 2.

W

w, not occurring in Italian alphabet, 2; pronunciation of, 3 (a).

weak vbs., p. 116, n. 1.

“what”, rendering of, 151, 154 (a).

X

x, not occurring in Italian alphabet, 2; pronunciation of,

3 (a); Eng. **c** or **s** replaces, p. 25, Rem. (2) (a).

“you”, rendering of, p. 50, n. 2, 91.

Y

y, not occurring in Italian alphabet, 2; pronunciation of, 3 (a).

Z

z, zz, value of, 26; **il** or **lo** before, p. 27, n. 3.